



An Elementary
AMERICAN
HISTORY

MONTGOMERY



Class E 178

Book . M 782

Copyright N^o 1909

COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT.



THE NORTHMEN ON THE COAST OF GREENLAND

AN ELEMENTARY
AMERICAN HISTORY

BY

D. H. MONTGOMERY

AUTHOR OF THE LEADING FACTS OF HISTORY SERIES

BOSTON, U.S.A., AND LONDON

GINN & COMPANY, PUBLISHERS

The Athenæum Press

1904

LIBRARY of CONGRESS

Two Copies Received

APR 15 1904

Copyright Entry

Jan. 12 - 1904

CLASS a XXc. No.

76897

COPY B

E 178
1
M 782
1904

LEADING FACTS OF HISTORY SERIES

By D. H. MONTGOMERY

Beginner's American History

(Biographies of Eminent Americans)

List price, 60 cents

An Elementary American History

List price,

The Leading Facts of American History

List price, \$1.00

The Student's American History

List price, \$1.40

The Leading Facts of English History

List price, \$1.12

The Leading Facts of French History

List price, \$1.12

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL

COPYRIGHT, 1904

By D. H. MONTGOMERY

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

PREFATORY NOTE

This book has been prepared to meet the demand for a short, continuous, narrative history of our country, suited to the wants of elementary pupils.

Throughout the work, the attention of the pupil is constantly directed to those events which are of primary interest and importance. Whenever such events have been shaped by the action of some well-known man, the writer has endeavored to show the part which that man contributed. By this means history becomes living and real even to the youngest student of its pages.

Every prominent topic has been carefully and fully illustrated with appropriate cuts or maps, in order that the book may appeal to the eye as well as to the understanding.

Numerous cross references have been introduced for the convenience of teachers and of those pupils who are old enough to derive benefit from them.

The dates inclosed in parentheses are for the purpose of enabling those who use the book to follow the order of time intelligently. All of the most important dates

are left uninclosed, with the view of fixing the pupil's attention on them. These uninclosed dates are few in number and can be readily committed to memory.

Literal quotations are inclosed in quotation marks; words quoted in substance only begin with a capital, but have no quotation marks.

Finally, it is believed that nothing has been omitted which should legitimately find a place in a book of this class, and that nothing has been introduced which should be reserved for a more advanced work.

DAVID H. MONTGOMERY.

CONTENTS

	PAGE
I. THE DISCOVERY AND NAMING OF AMERICA (1000-1507)	1
II. HOW THE SPANIARDS, THE FRENCH, AND THE ENGLISH EXPLORED AND SETTLED AMERICA (1507-1600)	14
III. THE NORTH AMERICAN INDIANS	20
IV. THE ENGLISH COME TO AMERICA TO STAY; THEY SETTLE IN VIRGINIA IN 1607	29
V. HOW THE FIRST SETTLERS LIVED IN AMERICA	72
VI. WARS WITH THE INDIANS	81
VII. WHAT THE FRENCH DID IN THE WEST	89
VIII. THE ENGLISH COLONISTS IN AMERICA FIGHT THE FRENCH AND THE INDIANS	98
IX. HOW THE KING OF ENGLAND RULED AMERICA	111
X. THE AMERICAN COLONISTS QUARREL WITH THE KING; THE WAR OF THE REVOLUTION	117
XI. THE PEOPLE OF THE UNITED STATES MAKE A NEW FORM OF GOVERNMENT—THE CONSTITUTION (1787)	149
XII. GROWTH OF THE UNITED STATES UNDER THE CONSTITU- TION (1789-1861)	152
THE CIVIL WAR (1861-1865)	243
THE UNITED STATES SINCE THE CIVIL WAR	277
XIII. QUESTIONS	i
XIV. INDEX	xxx1

LIST OF FULL-PAGE ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGE
I. The Northmen on the Coast of Greenland . . .	<i>Frontispiece</i>
II. Printing the Name "America"	11
III. Farewell to the Pilgrims	51
IV. Mother recovering her Child from the Indians	87
V. Washington surveying Land in Virginia	103
VI. The Battle of Bunker Hill	127
VII. The Origin and Development of the American Flag	137
VIII. British Officers taking an American Sailor from a Ship	177
IX. Professor Morse sending the First Telegram	209
X. Finding Gold in California	221
XI. Farragut on his Way to New Orleans	255
XII. Review of the Union Armies at Washington, 1865	271
XIII. The World's Columbian Exposition at Chicago	291
XIV. The Louisiana Purchase Exposition at St. Louis	303

LIST OF FULL-PAGE MAPS

I. The Indian Tribes of America (colored)	facing 22
II. The Thirteen English Colonies	93
III. The Louisiana Country claimed by La Salle for France	95
IV. French Forts at the East	101
V. The Northern States in the Revolution	123
VI. The Southern States in the Revolution	141
VII. The United States of America in 1792 (colored).	facing 158
VIII. The Mexican War	217
IX. The United States in the Time of the Civil War (colored, double-page)	between 248, 249
X. Relief Map of the United States	273
XI. Territorial Growth of the United States on the North American Continent	275
XII. United States and Dependent Territories	301
XIII. Reference Map of United States at the Present Time (colored, double-page)	between 305, 306

AN
ELEMENTARY AMERICAN HISTORY

I

THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA (1000-1507)

WHAT THE NORTHMEN FOUND IN THE WEST

1. **Who the Northmen were.**—More than a thousand years ago a people called Northmen were living on the coast of Norway. They were sailors and fighters. There was nothing they liked better than a storm at sea or a battle on land. They, with men of the same name from the neighboring coasts of Denmark and Sweden, used to push out in their fast sailing vessels, land on the shores of England, and return with loads of plunder. Later they crossed over to England and not only conquered a large part of that country but settled there.

2. **The Northmen discover Iceland and Greenland.**—Not content with that great conquest, these “Kings of the Sea” pushed on northward and westward until they discovered Iceland. That, too, they seized as their own. A little more than a hundred years after that a Northman named Eric¹ the Red crossed the sea from Iceland and found a country still farther west. It was a land

¹ Eric (ĕr'ík).

of desolation, covered with fields of ice and snow all the year round. But Eric said, "If I give it a good name perhaps I shall get others to come here and settle"; so he called it Greenland.

This name sounded so pleasant that it led some of Eric's countrymen to go there and make themselves homes. You can see to-day the ruins of a stone church and a broken circle of stone huts which they built on the south coast. (See map on page 3.)

3. Leif Ericson finds "Vinland." — But far away as Greenland was, the Northmen were determined to go beyond it. About the year 1000 Leif Ericson,¹ a son of Eric the Red, set sail in search of a new and "strange shore." He found the country he was looking for. It was full of vines covered with purple bunches of wild grapes, so he named it "Vinland the Good." From that time on Leif Ericson was always called "Leif the Lucky."

4. Where was Vinland? — Now comes a puzzling question: Where was Vinland? The Northmen have never told us clearly where it was. Some people suppose it was part of the coast of Massachusetts. That may be true but it is not certain. The most the Northmen did at that time on this side of the Atlantic was simply this: they found somewhere a great lonely land covered with thick woods and given up to Indians and bears. They stayed for a time, and then they sailed away leaving everything just as they had found it. After they had said farewell to Vinland they never came back to it again. They seem even to have forgotten that they had ever seen it or eaten wild grapes there. What shall we say

¹ Leif Ericson (lif őr'ik-søn).

then? Did the Northmen discover America? Yes, but they discovered it only to lose it.

5. **What the Northmen have done for America.** — But though the Northmen did nothing then toward settling in this country, they did a great deal later on. Long after Vinland and Greenland had been abandoned, many of the descendants of the Northmen came from England



VOYAGES OF THE NORTHMEN

to New England and made themselves homes here. You can see some of their names on the street signs as you walk along in our cities,— such common names as Johnson and Anderson.

Since then, thousands and tens of thousands of emigrants have come to the United States from Norway, Sweden, and Denmark. They are coming to-day, and America always gives them a hearty welcome. They are a good kind of people to have here. They work hard,

save their money, and send their children to school. In all these ways they are helping to build up the republic. They are doing their part to make America worthy of whatever was really best in "Leif the Lucky" and in the brave Northmen who sailed with him and found "Vinland the Good."

6. Christopher Columbus plans a voyage to the West; trade with the Indies. — Nearly five hundred years after Leif Ericson found Vinland (§ 3),¹ Christopher Columbus² planned a daring voyage to the West.



Columbus was born in Genoa,³ Italy. When a boy he used to watch the ships come into that port. He enjoyed seeing

them unload the spices, silks, and pearls which they brought from the far East.

These things came from the eastern part of Asia, or what was generally called the Indies. You will see by looking on the map (on page 5) that they had to be brought part of the way across the land, — for then the Suez⁴ Canal did not exist. Bringing goods in that way made them cost much more than they would have done if they could have come all the way by water, as they do now.

7. How Columbus thought he could get to the Indies by water. — After Columbus grew to be a man he went to

¹ This reference is to Section 3 on page 2; similar references will follow from time to time.

² See the Life of Columbus in Montgomery's "Beginner's American History" in this series.

³ Genoa (jĕn'ō-ā); see map above.

⁴ Suez (soō-ĕz').

sea and became a sailor. He often asked himself whether some way might not be found to reach the Indies by water. At last he said, Since the world is shaped like a ball, what is to hinder me from sailing straight westward until I get clear round to the Indies?

At first he hardly dared speak of this plan, because in that day the Atlantic Ocean had a very bad name. It was called the "Sea of Darkness." Old sailors believed that if any one should try to cross it he would never get back again.

Columbus himself had no such fear, but he was too poor to set out on such a voyage without help. After years of waiting, after he had been laughed at as



The light parts of this map show how much of the world was then well known; the white crosses show those countries of eastern Asia of which something was known. The Suez Canal, which has been cut through the Isthmus of Suez, connects the Mediterranean Sea with the Red Sea

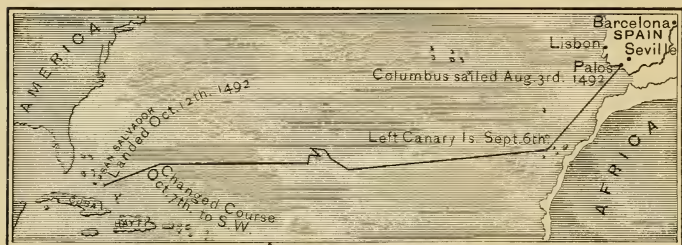
crazy, he at length got King Ferdinand and Queen Isabella of Spain to listen to his strange plan. They thought it might be worth trying, and the queen aided Columbus in fitting out a fleet of three very small vessels for the voyage.

8. Columbus sails westward, in 1492, to find the Indies.—As commander of that little fleet, Columbus set sail from Palos,¹ Spain, in the summer of 1492. He went first

¹ Palos (pā'lōs).

to the Canary Islands,¹ thinking that would be the shortest way across the Atlantic (see map below). He supposed that the whole distance from Spain to the Indies could not be much more than four thousand miles. That was a lucky mistake, for if he had known that it is really more than thirteen thousand miles he would not have started.

9. The great voyage from the Canary Islands across the Atlantic. — Columbus did not leave the Canary Islands



Map showing the direction in which Columbus sailed on his great voyage across the ocean

until the first week in September. Then he resolutely set out on his great voyage over an unknown sea.

The sailors who went with him were brave men, but when they saw the shore fading from their sight they could not help turning their eyes toward Spain. Some of them covered their faces with their hands and cried like little children, for they felt that they might now be saying good-by to land forever.

After they had been at sea about ten days they saw that the compass no longer pointed due north. That frightened them, for if the compass should prove false to them, how could they hope to keep their vessels straight on their course?

¹ Canary (ka-nā'ry).

A few days later they ran into a thick mass of seaweed which extended for hundreds of miles. This frightened them again, because they thought that they might get entangled in it and never be able to get out.

Next they noticed that the wind had changed and that it now blew steadily from the east. Day after day it kept blowing from that quarter. This new danger frightened the crew most of all; for, said they, if we have come to a part of the world where the wind always blows from the east, how can we ever turn about and sail back to Spain again?

Columbus did everything he could to encourage his men. But at last he told them plainly that they must go on.

10. Columbus discovers land; the West Indies and the Indians. — The very next day one of the sailors saw a branch with berries on it floating by. Then another sailor picked up a stick which looked as though it had been cut with a knife. These things made them think that they must be approaching land. The following night a seaman who was on the watch cried out with great joy, "*A light! Land!*"

When the sun rose, October 12, Columbus saw the low shores of a small island. He landed with some of his officers, and, kneeling on the sand, he gave thanks to God.

The little island was one of the Bahamas,¹ not very far from the coast of Florida (see map on page 9). Columbus named it San Salvador.²

The naked, brown-skinned people of San Salvador had never seen a white man before. They stood silent, staring at the Spaniards. Columbus supposed that this island, and the others which he afterward found, belonged to

¹ Bahamas (ba-hā'mas).

² San Salvador (sān sāl-vā-dōr').

Asia and the Indies. Since he had found them in the west he named them the West Indies. For the same reason he called the naked savages, who lived on these islands, Indians.

11. Columbus returns to Spain ; he makes three more voyages.— The next spring the great navigator went back to Spain. He was received like a prince. Every one supposed that he had found a new and direct way of getting to the Indies by water, and that he would soon be bringing back silks and spices by shiploads. Columbus



This map shows how Columbus (not knowing that America lay in the way) hoped to reach Asia and the East Indies by sailing west from Spain. The countries not then known are shown covered with dark shading ; for instance, nothing was then known of Africa except the coast, and nothing at all of North and South America and Australia

made three more voyages across the Atlantic, but they all ended in disappointment. He could not reach the Indies that he was trying to get at, because he came up against a long line of seacoast which blocked his way like a wall (see map above).

He supposed that seacoast was a part of Asia. Again and again he tried to find some passage through it for his

ships. At last he gave up hope. He was worn out in body and sick at heart, and he went back to Spain to die.

In one way he had failed, for he had not found the Indies he was looking for. But in another way he had



The light parts of this map show how much of America Columbus discovered. (The long island is Cuba; the large one to the right is San Domingo. San Salvador is a very small island north of Cuba)

succeeded; for, without knowing it, he had found a country far greater and richer than the Indies — he had discovered *America*.

So, too, the Northmen had discovered it nearly five hundred years before (§3). We have seen that they lost all knowledge of what they had found. But this time that discovery never would be lost.

12. What John Cabot did in 1497. — But although Columbus discovered America, he never set foot on any part of the mainland very far north of the Isthmus of Panama (see map above). It was John Cabot,¹ another Italian, who did that.

He was living in Bristol, England, when the news came that strange countries had been found on the other

¹ Cabot (kăb'ot).

side of the Atlantic. That made him determine to see what he could find in the same direction. In June, 1497, he came in sight of land. It was probably a part of the American coast near the southern entrance to the Gulf of St. Lawrence (see map below).

There John Cabot and his son went on shore and raised the English flag. His discovery gave the country to the king of England, and, for that reason, it gave the English people the right to come over and make settlements in North America. But, strange to say, they waited nearly a hundred years before they did so.



Map showing how much of the continent of North America was discovered by John Cabot and his son

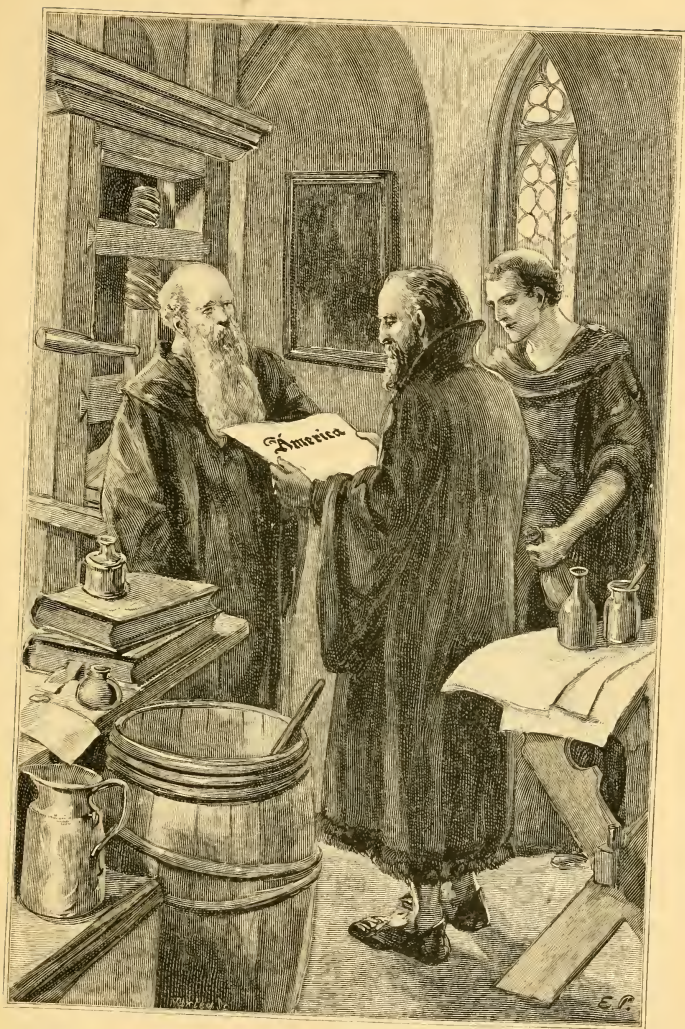
13. How America got its name. — While Columbus was living, another Italian, whose first name was Amerigo,¹ or, as he sometimes called it, Americus,

made a voyage westward from Spain. He sailed southward along the shores of Brazil.²

After he returned to Europe he wrote some letters describing what he had seen. He called the countries he had visited in the southwest a "New World." These letters were published and a teacher who lived in France

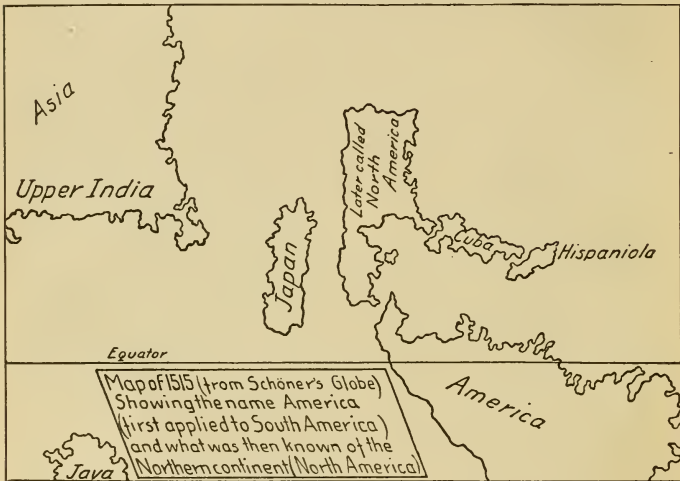
¹ His whole name was Amerigo Vespucci (ä-mä-ree'go vës-poot'chee), or, as he wrote it in Latin, Americus Vesputius (äm-ër'i-cüs vës-pū'shūs).

² Brazil (South America) (brä-zil').



PRINTING THE NAME "AMERICA" IN 1507

read them. It happened that this teacher was preparing to print a little book of geography. In it he gave an account of the three continents of Europe, Asia, and Africa, — which, of course, everybody knew about. Then he spoke of the “New World” of which Amerigo had just written. In doing so, the teacher said, I do not see



Map of 1515, showing what some geographers then supposed North America to be. This is one of the earliest maps on which the name *America* occurs. It will be seen that at that time it was confined to South America

why we should not give this new continent the name of the man who has told us about it, and so call it AMERICA (see map above).

In that way the name of our country appeared in print for the first time (1507). It looked strange then, and people had to learn to spell it and pronounce it, as they do a hard word now. But times have changed, and to-day everybody in the world, who pretends to know anything

about the earth on which he lives, knows this name, AMERICA, as far off as he can see it.

14. Review. — About the year 1000, Leif Ericson, a Northman, discovered America. He called it Vinland. The Northmen did not stay in America, and the discovery did them no real good.

Nearly five hundred years later, Christopher Columbus, an Italian, set out from Spain to find a short, direct way to the Indies by water. He crossed the Atlantic and discovered America in 1492. But he thought the land he had seen was part of Asia. He called it the West Indies, and named the inhabitants Indians.

Five years later, John Cabot, another Italian, sailed from Bristol, England, and landed on the *continent* of North America in 1497. He took possession of the country for the king of England.

Last of all, Amerigo Vespucci, who was also an Italian, sailed from Spain and discovered the coast of Brazil. He published an account of what he had seen. For this reason the "New World" he had described got the name AMERICA (1507).

II

HOW THE SPANIARDS, THE FRENCH, AND THE ENGLISH EXPLORED AND SETTLED AMERICA (1507-1600)

15. **The Spaniards in North America; Coronado and De Soto.** — After the Spaniards had built forts in Cuba and in some other West India Islands, they discovered a part of the mainland. They were greatly pleased with it and gave it the name of Florida.¹

Another party of Spaniards, led by Balboa,² climbed the mountains of the Isthmus of Panama³ and discovered the Pacific Ocean.

In the meantime a Spanish army had conquered Mexico and taken possession of that country. Many years later, Coronado⁴ set out from Mexico (1540) to see what he could discover toward the northeast. He was the first Spaniard who saw the great canyon of the Colorado River, — a gash in the earth more than a mile deep in some places, and several hundred miles long. He met immense herds of buffalo on the plains of Kansas, but he went no farther east.

If he had kept on until he reached the Mississippi River, he might have come upon another party of Spaniards,

¹ Florida: this is a Spanish word meaning flowery. It was given by the Spaniards because they discovered that country on Easter Sunday, which they call Flowery Easter.

³ Panama (păn-ă-mă').

² Balboa (băl-bō'ă).

⁴ Coronado (ko-ro-nă'do).

led by De Soto.¹ De Soto, like Coronado, was looking for gold mines. He had started from Florida (1539) and had wandered for nearly two years in the woods and swamps on his way westward. He at last reached the banks of the Mississippi. No white man had ever before stood on the banks of that mighty river. There he died,



BALBOA DISCOVERING THE PACIFIC OCEAN

and was buried at night in its muddy waters; so it turned out that "the most wonderful thing De Soto found was his own grave."

The Spaniards did not try to build any settlements in the eastern part of America until 1565. Then they attacked a party of Frenchmen who had come to Florida. They killed part of them and made slaves of the rest. In order to prevent any more Frenchmen from coming to Florida the Spaniards then built a fort on the coast and named it

¹ De Soto (dă so'to).

St. Augustine.¹ The town which grew up around that fort is the oldest in the United States, for it was begun more than three hundred and thirty years ago.

16. **The English explore parts of the American coast ; what Sir Francis Drake and Sir Walter Raleigh did.** — Many years after the Spaniards had constructed their fort at St. Augustine, Florida (§15), Sir Francis Drake, a famous English sea captain, sailed around the world.



DE SOTO DISCOVERS THE MISSISSIPPI

On his way he landed on the coast of California, not very far from where the city of San Francisco now stands. Then he sailed northward until he came to Oregon. There he landed again and set up a great post to which he nailed a brass plate with the name of Queen Elizabeth cut on it. In that way he took possession of the country for the queen of England (1579). But the English made no attempt to settle in that part of America, and they did not visit it again for many years.

¹ St. Augustine (sānt a'gūs-tēn').

Not long after that, Sir Walter Raleigh,¹ who was a great favorite with the queen, sent over a company of Englishmen to explore the eastern coast of America.

They landed on Roanoke Island,² off the coast of North Carolina (see map below).

The Indians thought these strange visitors with white faces must have come down from the skies to see them. They made haste to treat them to the best dinner they could offer—and with plenty of deer meat and wild turkeys they were able to get up a pretty good one.

When Raleigh's men went back to England, Queen Elizabeth was greatly pleased with their account of the country. She named it Virginia.³ She gave that name to a part of the coast more than a thousand miles long. It extended from North Carolina northward to



beyond Halifax. From this you will see that Virginia then included not only the states of North Carolina and Virginia as we now know them, but the country which was afterward cut up into the states of Maryland, Pennsylvania, New Jersey, New York, and those of New England, together with a part of Canada.

17. Sir Walter tries to build up an English settlement in Virginia; who owned North America in the year 1600.— Sir Walter Raleigh tried hard to build up an English settlement on Roanoke Island (see map above), but the

¹ Raleigh (raw'li).

² Roanoke (rō'ā-nōk').

³ Because she called herself the virgin or maiden queen of England.

people that he sent there would not stay, so all his plans failed.

But Sir Walter got two things from Virginia which he planted in his garden in Ireland — one was tobacco, the other was potatoes. The people of Great Britain knew nothing about either of these things until they were sent over from Virginia (1585).

For a long time everybody was afraid to touch a potato for fear of getting poisoned. But now more potatoes are eaten than any other vegetable that grows. This excellent article of food is one of the many good things which America has given to the world.

We have now come down nearly to the year 1600, or more than a hundred years since Columbus made his great voyage (§ 10).

In all that long time the only people who had made any settlements in North America which were still standing, were the Spaniards. But even they had none except a few in Mexico and one or two in Florida (§ 15). All the rest of the country from the Atlantic to the Pacific was a wilderness without a house in it; with nothing, in fact, but some Indian wigwams. In 1600 the Spaniards were the only white men left in North America. They called the whole continent theirs, and they meant to keep every acre of it for themselves — if they could. We shall soon see whether they did or not.

18. Review. — The Spaniards were the first white men to discover Florida and to take possession of Mexico. Coronado and De Soto wandered over the country between Florida and Mexico in search of gold, and De Soto discovered the Mississippi River.

In 1565 the Spaniards built St. Augustine, in Florida. It is the oldest town in the United States.

The French tried to make settlements in North America but failed. The English took possession of Oregon and of Virginia, but the settlements Sir Walter Raleigh endeavored to make in Virginia came to nothing. All that he got from them was some tobacco plants and some potatoes.

In 1600 the Spaniards were the only white men left in all North America, and they declared that they meant to keep it for themselves.

III

THE NORTH AMERICAN INDIANS

19. The Indians ; how they looked and how they lived. — Who were the strange people that Columbus saw when he first landed, and that he called Indians (§ 10)? No



INDIAN WOMEN BUILDING A BIRCH-BARK WIGWAM

white men had ever before seen any human beings just like them. They did not look like other people — for they had the color of an old piece of copper — and they spoke a different language.

Most of the Indians in the East lived in villages of small huts, called "wigwams," which they made of the bark stripped from trees. In the West they had tents made of buffalo skins. In Arizona and New Mexico a



AN INDIAN HOUSE IN ARIZONA

different kind of Indians lived together in large houses built of rough stones, or bricks made of clay and dried in the sun.

The Indians when Columbus found them had neither horses, cattle, nor sheep, for these useful animals were first brought to America by white men; but all tribes of Indians had dogs, which they used in hunting.

The Indians had no tools or weapons of iron or steel; but they made knives and hatchets, of a clumsy kind, from pieces of sharp flint fastened to wooden handles. They used bows and arrows to shoot with, and no white man with his gun could beat them in firing at a mark or hunting for game.

The Indian boys and girls never went to school, and never learned to read or write. But in their way they all had good educations; they knew how to find their way through the woods, and they knew something useful about every tree, plant, and animal in the woods. For

that reason an Indian boy could live in the forest, where a white boy would starve.

Since they could not read, they of course had no books of any kind. But they could draw pictures on pieces of birch bark, and these pictures would often tell a story about as well as any of our books can.

20. What the Indian men and women did.—The Indians lived mainly by hunting and fishing; they

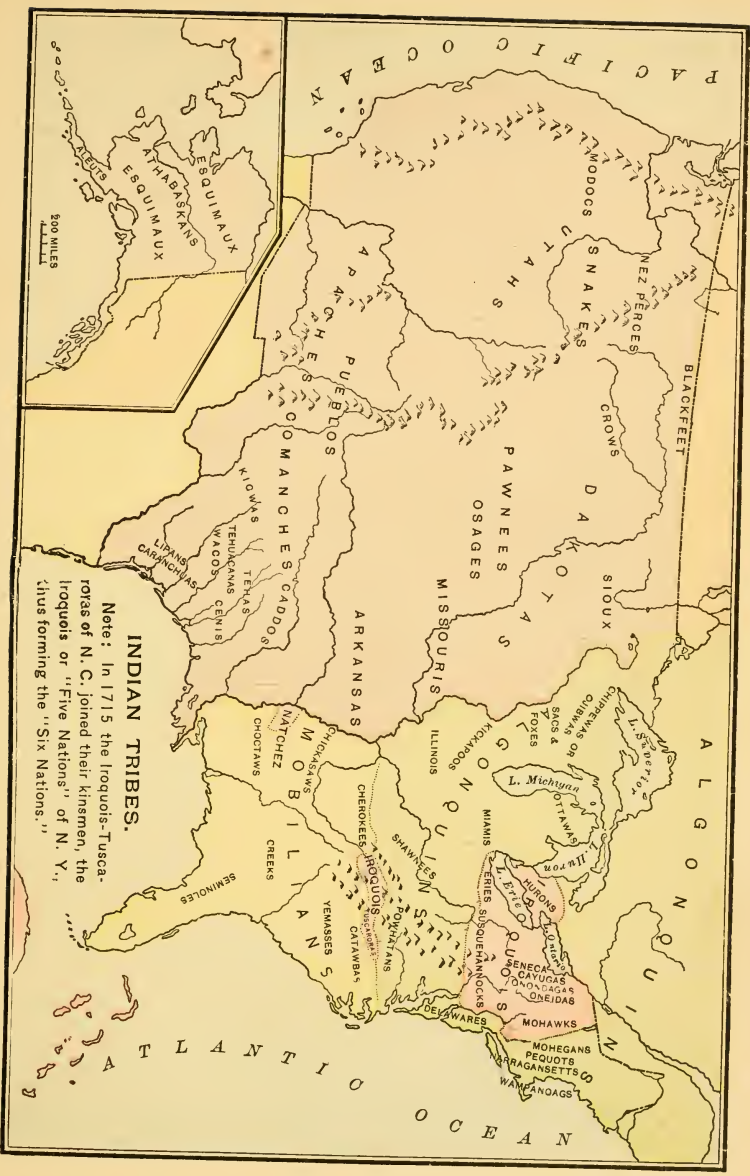


WESTERN WIGWAM

also cultivated small pieces of land, on which they raised corn, beans, pumpkins, and tobacco.

The men practically never did any work, but they did plenty of fighting, for the people of different tribes were almost constantly at war with each other.

The women, or squaws, did the work. They built the birch-bark wigwams. They hoed the corn and tobacco



INDIAN TRIBES.

Note: In 1715 the Iroquois-Tuscaroras of N. C. joined their kinsmen, the Iroquois or "Five Nations" of N. Y., thus forming the "Six Nations."



with clam-shell hoes. They got up early on cold winter mornings and kindled the fire by rubbing two dry sticks together until they burst into a blaze. That was something which no white man knew how to do. Then the Indian women cooked the breakfast and washed up the earthenware pots in which they had cooked it, which they had made themselves from clay baked in the fire. After



INDIAN BOYS PLAYING BALL

that, they sat down and made suits of deerskin clothes for the little Indians, or they wove baskets out of grass, or made moccasins and snowshoes.

When moving day came — and it came very often — the squaws were busier than ever. They started off through the woods carrying the furniture, if they had any, in their arms, and their babies on their backs, until they came to the place where they were to build their

new wigwams. You see that the Indians did not waste much of their time; the women found plenty to do at home, and the men found plenty to do away from home in killing other Indians.

21. How the Indians traveled. — The Indians had no roads leading from place to place such as we have to-day. But they had narrow footpaths or trails. They made



INDIAN WOMAN KINDLING A FIRE WITH
TWO DRY STICKS

these trails by walking one behind the other, as you often see cattle do in a field.

Some of these trails extended through the woods in the East for hundreds of miles; others extended in the same way across the great barren plains of Kansas and Utah. One famous trail in the East led from

the Hudson River, where Albany now stands, to Buffalo on Lake Erie; another led from Boston to the Connecticut River. In fact, the whole country was marked by these trails, some of which may still be seen in the far West.

When the white settlers came, they widened these trails by cutting down the trees on each side. In that way they laid out the first roads.

Later, when railways were built, they often followed these old Indian paths. The Boston and Albany Railroad, the New York Central, and much of the Union Pacific were constructed along the lines marked out by such trails.

So to-day, when we are driving through the country from town to town, or flying across the states in express

trains, we are frequently following the footsteps of the Indians. Hundreds of years ago they walked in single file over the same ground, carrying their bows in their hands, ready for a fight.

But the Indians had other ways of getting about. They went in their birch-bark canoes. The men made the canoes themselves — it was one of the few pieces of real work which they ever did. In these beautifully constructed boats, which were as light as paper, the red men paddled their way through the country in all directions.

22. The number of Indians in North America; how the Indians and the White Men got on together.

— The whole number of Indians in America was never very large. There were two rea-

sons for this. One was because the different tribes were constantly at war, killing each other off. They enjoyed fighting as much as boys enjoy a game of football.

The next reason why there were not many Indians was because even a few of them needed an immense country to hunt in.



INDIAN TRAIL THROUGH THE WOODS

A dozen white men could live on a small piece of land, for they would cultivate it and raise on it all the food they wanted. But a dozen Indians, who got most of their food by shooting deer or bears, could not live unless they had miles and miles of woods to roam over.

This fact often made trouble between the white settlers and the red men. The farmers wanted to cut down the



AN INDIAN WAR DANCE

forests and plow up the land and plant it. But the Indians did not want the forests cut down, because then they could not hunt game.

It is true that the Indians themselves used to burn the trees and bushes on small patches of ground which they wanted for gardens. But when they did so they would move away after a short time and let all the trees grow up again. But the white men, when they cut down the trees, had no intention of letting them grow up again,

and on this account the Indians and the Whites would quarrel and go to war. Each thought the other was to blame.

23. What the Indians taught the White Men. — But in some cases both races lived together as friends. Then the Indians taught the white men many things that were of the greatest use to them. They showed them how to plant corn and how to make it grow. We must remember that no white man had ever seen an ear of corn until he came to America. The Indians first showed it to him.

To-day the corn crop of the United States is the greatest food crop of the kind raised in America. It has helped to make us rich. We send away millions of bushels and sell them in other countries, besides using millions of bushels more at home. Then, in addition to this, we feed out millions of bushels to fatten pork which we eat ourselves or export to Europe to be eaten there.

Well, we got our first lesson in raising corn from the Indians, who owned the land before we did.

24. Review. — Columbus first gave the name Indians to the wild people that he saw in the West India Islands. They were a copper-colored race of people who at the East usually lived in villages of bark huts. They had no horses, cattle, or sheep, and no other animals except hunting dogs.

They had no tools or weapons made of iron or steel. They got their living by hunting and fishing and raising small fields of corn.

The men did all the fighting and the women did all the hard work. The men made trails across the country for roads, and they paddled their canoes on the streams and lakes in all directions.

The Indians were never very numerous ; their wars with each other and their habits of life kept them from growing and filling the country, as the white men do now. They sometimes quarreled with the white men about cutting down the forests, and these quarrels frequently ended in terrible wars.

But the red men were often great friends to the white settlers. They first showed them how to cultivate Indian corn, which is to-day the greatest food crop of the kind raised in America.

IV

THE ENGLISH COME TO AMERICA TO STAY ; THEY SETTLE IN VIRGINIA IN 1607

25. Why the English made up their minds to settle in Virginia. — We have seen (§ 17) that down to the year 1600 the Spaniards were the only white men who succeeded in holding possession of any part of North America. They had made settlements in Mexico (§ 17) and in Florida (§ 15), but that was all.

But now the time was speedily coming when the English and the French would get part of the country. The French made a settlement at Quebec¹ in Canada (1608). The English, as we shall presently see, went farther south and settled.

Some one may ask, Why did the English, after they had once given up Virginia (§§ 16, 17), make up their minds to come back again and get possession of it and keep it?

The answer to that question is easy. In the first place, the king of Spain had made war on England. He had tried to conquer that country and had completely failed. The English now resolved to get even with the king of Spain by taking away as much of North America from him as they possibly could.

¹ Quebec (kwę-běk').

In the next place there were, at this time, great numbers of poor people in England who could not find work. They were often in great distress; some of them could hardly get bread enough to eat. It was thought that they would be glad to go to America, where they could soon cut down the forests and make themselves comfortable homes.

26. Two English Companies undertake to send emigrants to America. — Two companies were now formed in England to send emigrants or colonists to Virginia (§§ 16, 17). One was called the London Company because it started in London; the other was called the Plymouth Company because it was made up chiefly of men who lived in the city of Plymouth, on the southwest coast of England. Both of these companies hoped to make money by building up English colonies or settlements in America.

27. The London Company sends over the first English emigrants. — The London Company sent the first ship-load of emigrants. There were about a hundred of them. There were no women or children among them.

The greater part of these emigrants were men who knew nothing about labor. They had never done a hard day's work in their lives. Many of them set out on the voyage as they would on a pleasure excursion. They expected to find mines of gold and silver in Virginia. Then, said they, when we have filled our bags with riches we will go back to England and live like lords.

28. The English Colonists land in Virginia, 1607; Captain John Smith. — The colonists reached the coast of Virginia in the spring of 1607. They landed on a small island. They began building a town there which they named Jamestown, in honor of James the First, who was

then king of England (see map below). They built huts, made of branches of trees, to live in. But things did not go well with them. They were not used to such hot weather as they had in Virginia, and by September many of them had fallen sick and died.

Luckily for the rest of them, one of the colonists was Captain John Smith.¹ He was a young man who was rather fond of telling big stories of what he had seen or what he had done. But in spite of that fault he was just the kind of person to build up a new settlement in a strange land. He always seemed to know how to get himself out of trouble, and, at the same time, he knew how to get other people out of it. In Virginia, a man like that was worth far more than a gold mine.

29. How Captain Smith's life was saved, and the colonists fed. — One day when Captain Smith, with a small party of men, was out exploring the country, the Indians suddenly attacked them. They killed several of the white men and carried off the captain prisoner.

The chief of the tribe was Powhatan.² He hated the English because he believed they meant to get the land away from the Indians.

When he saw Captain Smith brought into his wigwam he made up his mind to knock his brains out. A big Indian stood all ready, with a club raised. As soon as



¹ See the "Life of Captain John Smith in Montgomery's "Beginner's American History" in this series.

² Powhatan (pow-hă-tăn').

Powhatan gave the word he would strike the death blow. Just then Pocahontas,¹ the chief's daughter, a girl of ten, ran up and begged her father to spare the white man's life.

Powhatan could not refuse his darling child anything, so he told the captain he might go free. Smith returned in safety to Jamestown. Shortly afterward Pocahontas came with a number of Indians bringing a quantity of corn and deer meat as presents to the hungry colonists.

30. Captain Smith is made governor ; he sets everybody to work. — After a time Captain Smith was chosen governor of the colony. He was determined that there should be no idle hands in Jamestown. He made a rule that those who would not work should get nothing to eat. Some of the emigrants were very lazy, but rather than go without their dinners they began to bestir themselves in earnest.

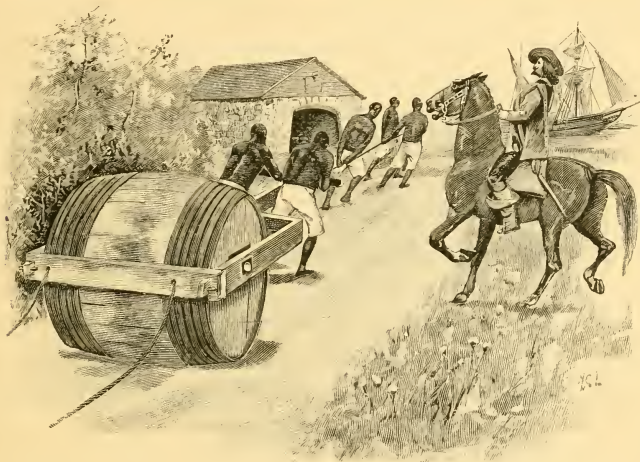
Governor Smith set some to planting corn, and others to chopping down trees. He ordered the rest to saw the logs into boards to be sent to England and sold. Things now began to improve a little. Under Governor Smith's wise management the colonists were learning this great truth,—the only way a man can make anything in America is, first of all, to find out how to make something useful of himself.

31. Captain Smith goes back to England ; the colonists become landowners, and begin to raise tobacco. — Not long after Captain Smith had made these changes for the better, he met with a bad accident. It compelled him to leave the colony and go back to England.

¹ Pocahontas (po-kə-hŏn'tas).

A new governor now came over to take charge of the Virginia colonists. He gave each one of them a piece of ground. When the men became landowners they at once set to work with a will, digging it, planting it, and raising corn. They were no longer inclined to be lazy, for now they saw something worth working for,

But the time had come when the people of Jamestown were to begin raising something very different from corn.



SLAVES HAULING TOBACCO TO THE WHARF TO SEND TO ENGLAND

One of the colonists, named John Rolfe,¹ had married Pocahontas (§ 29). He built himself a log cabin and planted several acres of tobacco around it (§ 17).

Before Rolfe began raising tobacco, the people of Virginia had been puzzled to find anything they could send to England and sell. But they now discovered, to their great delight, that the English would buy all the tobacco

¹ Rolfe (rölf)

they could get. This made the colonists willing to stay in Virginia, for they could now carry on a good trade with the "old country," as they called England.

32. More emigrants come to Virginia; English girls come; the tobacco plantations.—A good many emigrants now began to come to Virginia to start tobacco farms or plantations. Then some English girls thought that they would like to cross the sea and get homes in America on the plantations.

When these girls landed at Jamestown the young men were there to meet the vessel. They stood ready to pay the captain for bringing the young women over. They had no money, so they paid the fare in tobacco which they had raised, and which was just as good as money.

In this way the young farmers of Virginia got wives; and the rough log houses on the river banks soon began to look very bright and cheerful.

The tobacco plantations kept growing in number. Scores of vessels came over from England to carry the "weed" to London; for by this time almost everybody there was smoking it.

33. How slavery began in Virginia in 1619.—Up to this time the colonists in Virginia had always done their own work; but now a great change took place.

In the year 1619 a Dutch vessel arrived at Jamestown. She brought twenty negro slaves from Africa. The men who raised tobacco were glad to buy these black men and set them to work on their plantations.

That was the way in which slavery began in our country. People then saw no more harm in buying a negro than in buying a horse or an ox. Slavery spread little

by little. In time every colony in America, from New England to Georgia, owned black men.

34. Many planters buy white laborers. — But many small tobacco planters could not afford to buy negroes. They now found that they could buy white laborers much cheaper.

There were three kinds of these white laborers for sale. First, there were poor people in England who went to America and sold themselves, to work for a time, to any one who would pay their passage over.

Next, there were rascals in London who made it a regular business to steal boys and girls — yes, they even seized and carried off full-grown men. They then sent them to America and sold them.

Last of all, the judges in England would often send men and women to America who had committed some small offense. Perhaps they were barefooted and had taken a pair of shoes, or they were hungry and had taken a loaf of bread. Instead of putting these people in jail, as they would now, the judges would ship them over to America and sell them for seven years.

Sooner or later, all of these white laborers became free. Some of them would then go to work, save their wages, buy a piece of land, and begin raising tobacco or wheat on it.

35. The people of Virginia get the right to make their own laws in 1619. — The same year that the Dutch vessel brought the first negroes to Jamestown (§ 33), the governor of Virginia granted the colonists a great privilege.

Before that time none of the settlers had the right to say what laws should be made to govern the colony. The London Company (§§ 26, 27) used to tell the people

in Virginia what they must do and the governor punished them if they disobeyed.

But now all this was changed. The governor asked every town in Virginia to choose two men to meet him at Jamestown, to help him make the laws. There were



A RUNAWAY SLAVE

then eleven towns in the colony. So they chose twenty-two persons to represent them. These twenty-two representatives met the governor in the little church at Jamestown. Together they now decided how the colony should be governed.

The people never lost that precious privilege. For that reason Virginia got a large measure of liberty and kept it.

To-day the people of the United States make all of their own laws.

That is why they call themselves free men. Let us remember that this freedom began in the year 1619, in the little church at Jamestown, in the colony of Virginia.

36. Review. — The first English colonists who came to America to stay, settled at Jamestown, Virginia, in 1607. In the beginning, Captain John Smith did more for the colony than any one else.

The first profitable crop the colonists raised was tobacco, which they sent to England and sold. In time, the raising of tobacco became the greatest industry in the colony. In order to carry it on, the planters bought negro slaves. In that way slavery began in America in the year 1619. The planters also bought white laborers, but these laborers always got their freedom again in a few years.

In 1619 the people of Virginia gained the great privilege of taking part with the governor in making the laws. This is one reason why the United States is a free country now; that is, a country in which the people make the laws by which they are governed.

THE SETTLEMENT OR COLONY OF NEW YORK (1614)

37. Captain Henry Hudson discovers a great river. — Two years after the English emigrants landed at Jamestown, Virginia (§ 28), Henry Hudson, an English sea captain, made a famous voyage. He was hired by a Dutch trading company in Holland or the United Netherlands.¹ They sent Captain Hudson to America to see if he could find a passage or opening through, by which he could sail to the Indies (§ 11).

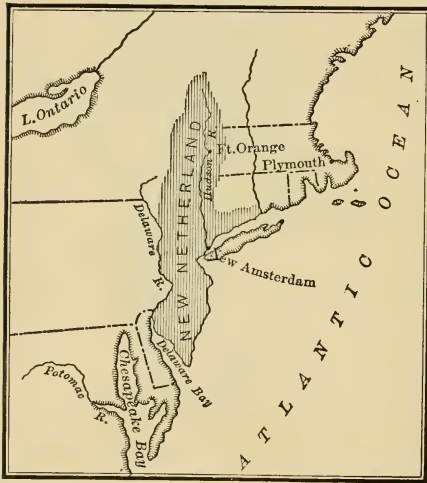
While he was searching for such a passage he entered the mouth of a noble river. After he had sailed up the stream about a hundred and fifty miles he found that the

¹ The Netherlands (něth'ēr-landz) or Lowlands. Holland (or the hollow or low land) was part of the Dutch states called the United Netherlands.

water was not deep enough for him to go much farther. For this reason he turned about and sailed back to Europe.

The Indians of that part of the country called the stream he had explored the "River of the Mountains." They gave it that name because the lower part of it winds among hills, and later, flows past the cliffs of the "Palisades." But to-day we call that river the Hudson.

38. The Dutch take possession of "New Netherland"; they buy an island at the mouth of the Hudson. — A number



NEW NETHERLAND

of years afterward, the Dutch took possession of the country bordering on the Hudson. They also took possession of the country lying south of it as far as Delaware Bay (see map). They named the whole of this region New Netherland — which meant the same thing as New Holland.

Next, a Dutch trading company asked the Indians to sell them Manhattan¹ Island, near the mouth of the Hudson. The Indians had more land than they wanted, and they were glad to do this. They sold the island for a few yards of bright red cloth, some shining brass

¹ Manhattan (măh-hăt'ăn).

buttons, and some gay beads and pieces of ribbon. The red cloth and the buttons delighted the hearts of the Indian warriors, while the beads and ribbons made the eyes of the squaws sparkle with joy.

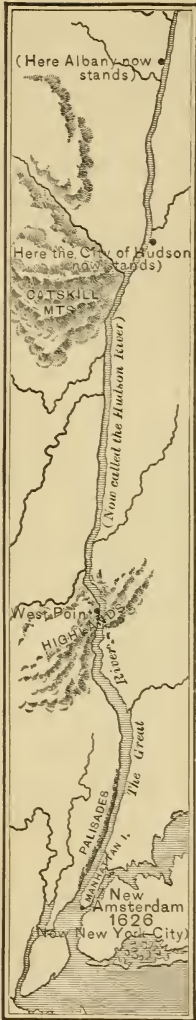
By this bargain the Dutch got Manhattan Island for less than twenty-five dollars. They named the settlement they had made there, New Amsterdam, from Amsterdam, the largest town in Holland (1626).

Now, that island is covered by the great city of New York, and the land on which it stands is worth more than three thousand millions of dollars! If a boy of ten should begin to-day to count that sum of money and should keep counting at the rate of sixty dollars a minute for eight hours every day, he would grow old and die before he had got through counting a quarter of it.

39. The Dutch lay out great farms or estates on the banks of the Hudson. — The Dutch were a very industrious, money-making, and enterprising people. They sent their ships on voyages all over the globe. In New Netherland they bought furs from the Indians, which they sent to Europe to sell. In this way many of them became very rich. But they wanted to do more than this; for they hoped to get a large number of their countrymen to come over from Holland and make homes in New Netherland, as the English were doing in Virginia (§ 32).

For this reason they offered to give great pieces of land on the Hudson to any member of the company who would bring over fifty emigrants or more to settle on it. Whoever accepted this offer was to receive a title of honor; he was to be called a patroon¹ or protector.

¹ Patroon (pà-trōon').



A PART OF NEW
NETHERLAND

A number of wealthy men came over from Holland. They brought emigrants with them to cultivate the land, and they took possession of vast estates on the river.

One of these patroons was named Van Rensselaer.¹ He got the larger part of what are now two counties near the city of Albany.² Later, he added part of another county, so that in the end he owned a piece of land bigger than the whole state of Rhode Island.

There he lived like a king. He had no one to contradict his will, and he had hundreds of Dutch laborers working on his great farms.

40. The English take away New Netherland from the Dutch. — But the king of England had no intention of letting the Dutch stay quietly in New Netherland. He declared that John Cabot (§ 12) had taken possession of all that part of North America, and that it belonged by right to England.

The Dutch governor of New Netherland was Peter Stuyvesant.³ He lived at New Amsterdam on Manhattan Island (§ 38). He was honest,

¹ Van Rensselaer (văn ren'se-lər).

² Albany (al'ba-nī).

³ Stuyvesant (stī've-sant).

hot-tempered, and fearless. When he was told that the English king meant to take the Dutch possessions in America he vowed that he would defend them with his life.

But on a hot August day (1664) several British war ships sailed into the harbor of New Amsterdam. The commander of the fleet came on deck and ordered his men to aim their cannon at the little Dutch fort of the town. Then he sent word to Governor Stuyvesant telling him that the king of England had made a present of the whole of New Netherland (§ 38) to his brother, the Duke of York.

“Pull down the Dutch flag at once,” said he; “and send me the keys of the fort, or I will fire on you.”

Governor Stuyvesant was not at all frightened. He ordered his soldiers to get ready to fight the English, though the English had at least six times as many armed men as he had. But the Dutch women and children came crowding into the fort and begged him, with tears, not to provoke the British commander to destroy their homes.

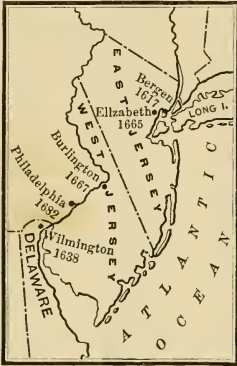
The brave old governor hesitated. He said to the women and children, “I had rather be carried to my grave than give up the fort, but you shall have your way.”

Then he gave the order to pull down the Dutch flag, which had waved there for nearly forty years. The British soldiers came on shore and, entering the fort, ran up the blood-red banner of England in its place.

From that time (1664) all of New Netherland on the Hudson was called New York, because now the Duke of York owned it. For the same reason, the town of New Amsterdam got the name of New York.

THE SETTLEMENT OR COLONY OF NEW JERSEY
(1617)

41. **The southern part of New Netherland becomes New Jersey.**— The Duke of York did not care to keep the whole of New Netherland (§ 38) for himself. He was contented with the part now called New York (§ 40).



New Jersey: It was divided for a time into East Jersey and West Jersey

He gave the southern part of New Netherland, which lay between the Hudson and the Delaware rivers to his friends, Lord Berkeley¹ and Sir George Cartaret² (see map).

Sir George had been governor of the English island of Jersey, which lies south of Great Britain, and he was a great favorite with the king. Out of compliment to him the Duke of York now gave the name New Jersey to this part of America.

42. **William Penn and some other Quakers buy New Jersey.**— A number of years later, some English Quakers,³ one of whom was the famous William Penn,⁴ bought New Jersey. The Quakers looked upon all men as brothers. They treated the Indians of New Jersey just as well as they would white people.

The Indians could not read or write; they were savages; but, although they were savages, they were not

¹ Berkeley (bĕrk'li).

² Cartaret (kär'tĕr-et).

³ Quakers; see § 46, under Pennsylvania.

⁴ William Penn; see § 45, under Pennsylvania.

fools. They knew when they were well treated, so they became firm friends of the Quakers. If they happened to find one of them lying asleep in the woods, they would say, "He is an Englishman ; he is asleep ; let him alone."

43. How the Quakers governed their colony of New Jersey. — The Quakers seem to have done everything they could to make the emigrants who came to New Jersey contented and happy. They said to them, "We place all power in the hands of the people. You shall make your own laws, and worship God in your own way." New Jersey got on well ; and it was said that not a single poor man could be found in the whole colony.

After many years had passed, the owners of the country thought it would be best to give it up to the king. He then appointed governors for it. William Franklin, son of Benjamin Franklin of Philadelphia, was the last royal governor of the colony of New Jersey.

44. Review. — Captain Henry Hudson discovered the great river in America which is now called by his name. The Dutch took possession of all that part of the country as far south as the Delaware River, and gave it the name of New Netherland.

They bought Manhattan Island, at the mouth of the Hudson, from the Indians, and built New Amsterdam on it.

But the English declared that all of New Netherland belonged to them. They took it away from the Dutch and named the northern part of it New York ; New Amsterdam became New York City.

That part of New Netherland which lay south of the Hudson River then got the name of New Jersey. It was

sold to William Penn and some other Quakers. They gave the people who came there the power of making their own laws.

THE SETTLEMENT OF PENNSYLVANIA AND DELAWARE (1681)

45. The king of England pays a debt to William Penn. — The king of England owed William Penn¹ (§ 42) a large sum of money. Instead of paying the debt in cash, he gave Penn a great slice of the American wilderness west of New Jersey. The king named it Pennsylvania or Penn's Woods. It was a country nearly as large as England.

His Majesty did not know that Pennsylvania contained immense mines of coal and iron, worth more money than he had ever seen in his life. If he had known it he might not have been so willing to give it away.

46. Who the Quakers were and what they believed; why it was that William Penn wished to make a settlement in Pennsylvania. — We have seen that William Penn belonged to a kind of people who were called Quakers (§ 42). Now the Quakers were very different from most of the English of that day.

In the first place they thought that it was wrong to fight. They wished to do away with war altogether, and to live in peace with every one. They refused to pay anything toward keeping up armies or war ships.

Next, they thought that all persons should receive equal honor. They would not take off their hats to a judge in

¹ See the Life of William Penn in Montgomery's "Beginner's American History" in this series.

court — no, they would not take them off to the king on his throne.

Then again, they thought that no one should ever be forced to swear to the truth of what he said. They insisted that even in a court of justice a man's simple word should be considered just as good as the most solemn oath.

Last of all, the Quakers held that no one should be compelled to go to any church against his will. They believed that all people ought to be left free to worship God in their own way. They said, "Every man's heart tells him what is right."

The greater part of the English did not understand what the Quakers were trying to do. They thought that they made a great deal of mischief. They said, "If these strange people had their way we should soon have no armies to fight for us, no courts of justice, no respect of persons, and no churches at all." On this account they often put the Quakers in jail, and sometimes whipped them most cruelly.

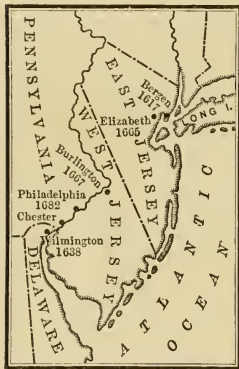
William Penn was glad to come into possession of Pennsylvania, because he saw that he could make a great Quaker colony or settlement there. Then all those who believed as he did would have a place to go where no one would disturb them.

47. Penn sends a colony to Pennsylvania; how he took possession of the new country. — Penn sent the first ship-load of emigrants to Pennsylvania (1681), and the next year he came himself.

He landed at Newcastle on the Delaware River, a few miles below where Wilmington now stands (see map on page 46). Many years before, some emigrants from

Sweden had settled in that part of the country and called it New Sweden. After a time this Delaware territory fell into the hands of the Dutch. Finally the Duke of York (§ 40) became owner of it. He sold it to Penn. Penn joined it to Pennsylvania, but, later, it became a separate colony. When the new owner arrived at Newcastle in the territory of Delaware one of the Duke of York's officers gave up the land to him.

First of all he presented Penn with the key of the fort at Newcastle. Next he handed him a sod dug from the ground. Last of all he gave him a dish filled with water from the Delaware River.



These things were done to show that William Penn had become master of the fort, the soil, and the river. That is to say, he was now master and owner of all the country which has since become the state of Delaware.

48. Penn begins building a city in the woods (1682). — A few days

later he went up the Delaware River into Pennsylvania (§ 45). He stopped at the place where he had resolved to begin the Quaker settlement (see map above). There the emigrants pulled off their coats and set to work cutting down trees and building log cabins (1682).

Penn was tired of seeing the narrow, crooked streets of London, where he used to play when a boy. On this account he made up his mind to lay out the streets of his new American town as straight as the rows on a checkerboard.

That was the way the largest and richest city in Pennsylvania began. Penn gave it the Bible name of Philadelphia, or the City of Brotherly Love.¹

He hoped that the colonists would live peacefully and happily there. He believed that they would be good Quakers and would practice that golden rule which



WILLIAM PENN LAYING OUT THE STREETS OF PHILADELPHIA

commands all men to do unto others what they wish others to do unto them.

49. Making laws for Pennsylvania ; Penn buys land of the Indians ; he makes a treaty or agreement with them. — The Quaker colonists at Penn's invitation met him, and together they agreed to make some excellent laws for the government of the new colony.

The first law gave every man the right to worship God in the way he thought best.

¹ Philadelphia ; see Revelation iii. 7-8.

Another law ordered that schools should be opened for teaching every child to read and write. In these schools every boy was expected to learn some useful trade by which he could get his living.

Although William Penn had received the territory of Pennsylvania from the king (§ 45), he believed that the Indians still owned the land.

He would not take it away from them without paying for it. The Indians were perfectly willing to sell him all he wanted. He paid them in blankets, knives, and fishhooks, because the red men liked these better than money.

Next, he called the Indians together under a great elm in Philadelphia and made a treaty or agreement with them. By that treaty the Quakers and the Indians promised to live as friends to each other as long as the sun should shine above them or the waters flow in the rivers.

The red men could not write this treaty on paper, but they gave Penn a belt made of beads which told the whole story. The belt may still be seen in Philadelphia.¹ It shows an Englishman and an Indian standing side by side, holding each other by the hand like brothers.

50. More emigrants come to Pennsylvania ; how America was built up. — In the course of time great numbers of emigrants went from Wales, the north of Ireland, and Germany to Pennsylvania.

Many of these people had no money with which to pay their passage across the sea to America. In that case they would make a bargain with the captain of the vessel ;

¹ This famous treaty belt may be seen in the rooms of the Philadelphia Historical Society.

he would bring them over and sell them to farmers in Pennsylvania. Then they would work for these farmers several years until they had paid them what their passage had cost.¹ They saved up all they could, and after a time they were generally able to buy farms for themselves.

One of the best things about our country is that it was settled in the beginning by people who came from different parts of Europe. There were a great many English, but there were also Irish, Scotch, Welsh, Germans, Norwegians, Swedes, Dutch, and French.

These people differed in many ways ; they did not look alike, they did not think alike, they did not at first speak alike. But though so different in these things, they all agreed about one thing. They loved liberty, and because they loved liberty, they learned to live together like one great family.

To-day when the government of the United States wants to build a mighty battle ship — one which will stand hard knocks — it does not construct the vessel of plates of pure steel alone. Instead of that the builders take plates made of nickel and steel.

The reason they do this is because steel, though very strong, is brittle, while nickel, though it is not strong, is very tough. By mixing the two metals the builders get plates which are far better and safer than either metal would make by itself.

Well, something like that was done when America was first settled. Many people came from different lands. Each brought some good thing which the other did not

¹ This class of emigrants was called "redemptioners," because they redeemed or bought themselves back ; compare Virginia (§ 34).

have. They worked together and built up a republic that is like a great battle ship. It is stronger, and better, and safer than any other country in the world.

51. Review. — The king of England gave Pennsylvania to William Penn, an English Quaker, in payment of a debt he owed him. Penn bought what is now the state of Delaware and added it to Pennsylvania.

He built the city of Philadelphia in order that English Quakers and all other emigrants who came to Pennsylvania might be free to worship God as they thought right.

Later on, many Germans and other people settled in Pennsylvania. They all worked together to build up a strong, rich, and free colony.

THE SETTLEMENT OF NEW ENGLAND (1620)

52. Massachusetts; the coming of the Pilgrims in 1620. — The Quakers who came to Pennsylvania were not the only people who emigrated to America to be free to worship God (§ 46).

Many years before Penn was born, a number of men and women left their pleasant homes in England and went to Holland (§ 37) to get the same freedom (see map on page 52).

These people called themselves Pilgrims or Wanderers. The Dutch in Holland were very kind to them. They gave them the liberty they could not then get in England.

But after some years had passed the Pilgrims resolved to leave Holland and go to America. There they hoped to build up a colony which would always remain English and would always speak English.



FAREWELL TO THE PILGRIMS

They went to England and sailed from Plymouth for America in the *Mayflower* in 1620. The Pilgrims numbered one hundred and two persons. Twelve of them were children. They were the first English boys and girls who

crossed the Atlantic and landed on the shores of the New World.



53. The Pilgrims arrive at Cape Cod; they land on Plymouth Rock, 1620.
— Toward the end of November the

Mayflower came to anchor in the harbor of what is now Provincetown, Cape Cod (see map on page 53).

There the men signed a paper by which they bound themselves to maintain good government in the colony. Then they chose John Carver as their first governor.

A month later they landed, December 21, 1620, on Plymouth Rock. It happens to be the only rock which can be found on that part of the Massachusetts coast for many miles.

On Christmas Day the men went into the woods, cut down trees, and began to put up a log cabin. This was the first house built by white men on the shore of Massachusetts. In the course of a few months they built six more such cabins and called the town New Plymouth; but later the name got shortened to Plymouth.

54. The first winter at Plymouth; the Indian visitor; Massasoit; the first Thanksgiving. — The winter was very

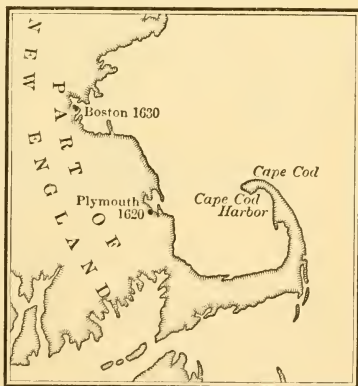
cold, and by the time the spring buds began to open, half of the Pilgrims were dead and in their graves. But when the *Mayflower* sailed for England in April, not one of the colonists went back in her. They had come here resolved to stay, and to make a *new* England in America.

One day when they were at work, an Indian¹ suddenly appeared. He walked boldly into the little log village and shouted, "Welcome, Englishmen!" Then he went away, but soon came back with an Indian chief named Massasoit.²

Governor Carver (§ 53) made a treaty or agreement with Massasoit by which they promised to stand by each other as friends. That treaty was faithfully kept on both sides for more than fifty years.

The Indians belonging to Massasoit's tribe were very kind to the Pilgrims. They showed them how to plant corn (§ 23), and how to shoot fish with bows and arrows. They also taught the white men how to dig clams on the beach, and how to catch eels by treading them out of the mud. If the Indians had not helped the colonists in these ways they might all have starved.

When autumn came the corn was gathered. Then the little band of Pilgrims,



¹ The Indian's name was Samoset (săm'o-set); he had learned a few words of English from English sailors who had come to the coast of Maine.

² Massasoit (măs'sa-soit').

with the Indians, sat down to a great feast. They had deer meat, and fish, and wild turkeys. This was the first Thanksgiving kept in New England. Now, that day is kept all over the United States, and more than eighty millions of people sit down to the feast.

55. Captain Myles Standish has a fight with some strange Indians; town meeting. — A number of years afterward, Massasoit (§ 54) told the colonists that another tribe of Indians were going to attack them. The strange Indians lived about twenty miles north of Plymouth. They had been badly treated by some Englishmen who had made a settlement on that part of the coast, and who stole corn from them. On this account they had resolved to kill off all white men wherever they could find them.

Captain Myles Standish¹ went from Plymouth to inquire into the matter. He was not much taller than a boy of sixteen. The Indians laughed at him because he was so small, and threatened to kill him.

But the captain was too quick for them. He was the one who did the killing; and he soon made the rest of the red men confess that a little man might be a great captain.

After that, all went on peacefully for many years. The Pilgrims slowly increased in number, for more emigrants came over from England. They managed all their public business by coming together from time to time in town meeting. There they talked matters over — whether they should make a new road through the woods or build a new high fence around the town. Then each man voted

¹ See the Life of Captain Myles Standish in Montgomery's "Beginner's American History" in this series.

as he thought best, and that settled it. In that way they governed themselves without any king.

These town meetings held in Plymouth were the first that were ever held in America. Later, all of the English settlements made in New England had such meetings, and they are still kept up.

56. Massachusetts; the Puritans build settlements at Salem; and Boston (1630).— Less than ten years after the Pilgrims landed on Plymouth Rock (§ 53), a number of English emigrants made a settlement in Massachusetts, or the “Land of the Blue Hills.”¹ The emigrants named the town Salem, a word taken from the Bible and meaning peace² (see map on page 61).



THE FIRST CHURCH BUILT
IN BOSTON IN 1632

These new colonists left England for the reason that they did not like some things which were done in the English Church.³ They

¹ Massachusetts was the name the Indians gave to the Blue Hills just south of Boston, and to the neighboring country.

² Salem (sā'lem); see Hebrews vii. 2.

³ The Puritans did not like part of the dress worn by the ministers of the Church of England in their religious services. They objected also

got the name of Puritans because they said that the English Church ought to be *purified*, or made to give up what they did not like.

The next year (1630) Governor John Winthrop came over from England. He brought with him more than eight hundred emigrants, besides horses and cattle. This was the largest number of English people that had ever come to America at any one time.

All of these people were Puritans. They began building a town (1630) on the coast of Massachusetts Bay, not very far south of Salem. They named the town Boston, because many of them knew and loved the old city of Boston in England (see map on page 52).

57. Plymouth Colony is joined to Massachusetts Colony; the Puritans drive out the Quakers. — Later on, a great many more Puritans came to Massachusetts. After a time the colony of Plymouth (§ 53), or the "Old Colony," as it was now called, was joined to Massachusetts Colony.

The Puritans were determined to keep Massachusetts to themselves. They did not intend to let other emigrants, who thought differently, come and make homes in their colony. They said, There is plenty of room in America for everybody, so it would be foolish to crowd people together who cannot agree.

It was for this reason that they drove out some Quakers¹ (§ 46) who came to Boston, and it was partly on this to their using a ring in performing the marriage service, and to the way in which they baptized children, because they said this dress and these ceremonies resembled those used by Catholic priests.

¹ Some of the Quakers felt it their duty to go into the Puritan meetinghouses on Sunday and call out to the minister to come down from his pulpit and stop preaching.

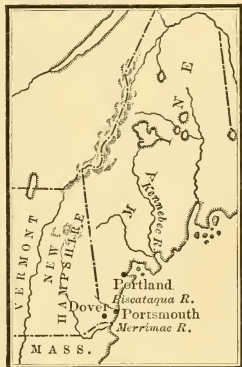
account that they drove out Roger Williams, as we shall see when we come to the history of Rhode Island.

58. Who could vote in Massachusetts Colony; the public schools. — The Puritans would not allow any one living in Massachusetts to vote unless he belonged to their church. This was the way they thought they could get good men to make the laws.

The Puritans were very anxious too that their children should not grow up in ignorance. They opened a public school¹ in Boston (1635); and although they were poor they gave a good sum of money to build Harvard College in Cambridge (1636). It was the first college opened in America.

59. New Hampshire; Settlements made in New Hampshire (1623);

Maine and Vermont. — A few years after the Pilgrims arrived at Plymouth (§ 53) two Englishmen obtained a very large tract of land north of Massachusetts. The land lay between the Merrimac and



Kennebec rivers (see map above). Settlements were made there (1623–1631). The largest town built was that of Portsmouth on the seacoast. The colonists bought furs of the Indians and caught codfish. They sent them to England to sell.

After a short time the territory was divided into two parts. The eastern portion received the name of Maine,

¹ But it was not like the free schools we have to-day; they were established in Massachusetts later on.

or the Mainland. The western portion was called New Hampshire because the owner of it came from the county of Hampshire in southern England.

The largest settlement made in Maine (1632) was Portland. Maine was joined to Massachusetts Colony (§ 56), but a great many years later (1820) it became a separate and independent state.

The country lying west of New Hampshire, between that colony and New York, was called Vermont—a French name meaning the Green Mountains. The first settlement in it was made at Brattleboro¹ (1724). After a long time Vermont became a separate state (1791).

60. What was done at Londonderry, New Hampshire.— Nearly a hundred years after the first settlement was made in New Hampshire, a number of emigrants went there from the town of Londonderry in the north of Ireland. They built a town to which they gave the same name.

These newcomers planted fields of flax. Their wives spun the flax into thread with their little spinning wheels. Then they wove it into cloth in their hand looms. In this way the first linen was made in America.

61. Connecticut ; how Connecticut was settled (1634).— In the meantime some English people had begun to make homes for themselves in the country south of Massachusetts. That region was called by the Indian name of Connecticut,² or the “Country of the Long River.”

One of the leaders of the emigrants who went a little later to Connecticut was the Rev. Thomas Hooker. He was a Puritan minister (§ 56) of Cambridge, Massachusetts.

¹ Brattleboro (brăt'1-bür-rō).

² Connecticut (kõn-nět'1-küt).

62. **Thomas Hooker's journey through the woods.**— He and the people belonging to his church wanted to find better grass for their cattle. But they wanted still more to build a town where all of the inhabitants could vote and make such laws as they thought best, which, as we have seen, they could not do in Massachusetts (§ 58).

One bright spring morning Mr. Hooker's company set out (1636) to find their way through the woods westward and southward to the Connecticut River. They followed an Indian trail for a long distance (§ 21), and drove a herd of a hundred and sixty cattle through the forest. At length, after two weeks of travel on foot, they saw, through the branches of the trees, the waters of



MR. HOOKER'S JOURNEY THROUGH THE WOODS

a broad and beautiful stream shining in the sunlight.

It was the Connecticut River, and when the emigrants came to its banks they decided to stop there. They could not have done better. Soon afterward, they began to build on a spot which is now known as the city of Hartford (see map on page 60).

63. More emigrants settle in the Connecticut Valley. —

Soon more emigrants went from Massachusetts to the Connecticut Valley. They built two more towns on the river, not far from Hartford. Later on, colonists came



over from England and built New Haven on the coast of Long Island Sound.

After many years had passed, the king of England decided to

join the New Haven Colony with the colony which had settled at Hartford and other points on the Connecticut River. In this way, what is now the state of Connecticut had its beginning.

64. Rhode Island; Roger Williams is driven out of Massachusetts. — The Rev. Thomas Hooker (§§ 61, 62) was not the only famous man who left Massachusetts to build up a new colony. Roger Williams, another Puritan minister (§ 56), did the same thing, but for a very different reason. We have seen that Mr. Hooker moved away from Massachusetts of his own accord; but Roger Williams, a young man who lived in Salem (§ 56), was driven out.

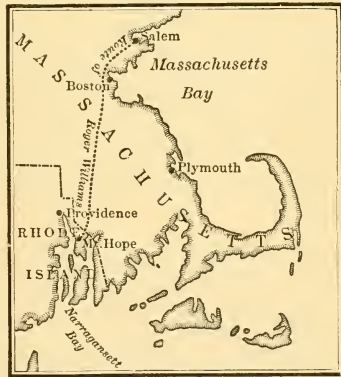
It happened in this way: Mr. Williams said that the Indians were the true owners of all the land in Massachusetts, and that the king of England had no right whatever to give the country away to the white people who had taken possession of it.

When Mr. Williams said this he stirred up a great deal of trouble and bad feeling. But this was not all, for presently Mr. Williams declared that the men who ruled Massachusetts did wrong in compelling people to go to church. He insisted that every one should be free to go or not, as he thought right.

Then the rulers of the colony decided that Mr. Williams was a dangerous man and that he must be sent back to England.

65. **Roger Williams goes to his friend Massasoit.**— When the young Salem minister heard that, he left his home and fled to the woods. He made up his mind that it would not be safe for him to return to Salem again, so he resolved to go to his Indian friend Massasoit (§ 54) who lived on the shores of Narragansett Bay¹ (see map).

It was winter, and Mr. Williams had to wade through deep snow. Day after day he kept on, making his way wearily through the lonely silence of the great forest. When night came he would cut down some pine boughs and make himself a kind of shelter to sleep in. The howling of the wolves would often keep him awake, but he was a brave man and he would not turn back.



Map showing Roger Williams's route from Salem to Mount Hope

¹ Narragansett (nă'r'a-găn'set).

At length, after much suffering, he reached Massasoit's smoky and dirty wigwam. The old chief was glad to see him. He took him into his hut and did the best he could to make him comfortable.

66. Roger Williams begins building Providence (1636). — Roger Williams stayed there until spring. Then he said good-by to Massasoit, and started out to make a home of his own.

When he came to a good place where there was a fine spring of water he bought a piece of land from the Indians and built a log cabin. He called the place PROVIDENCE because he believed that God's good providence had been his helper and guide.

That settlement is now the capital of Rhode Island, and is the second largest and wealthiest city in New England.

Roger Williams invited all people to come freely to Rhode Island and make homes there if they wished to stay. He was the first person in America who said that every one was entirely free to worship God in his own way.

67. Review. — In 1620 the Pilgrims landed on Plymouth Rock, Massachusetts, and began the first colony in New England.

Ten years later (1630) a large number of Puritans came from England to Massachusetts and began to build the city of Boston.

The Pilgrims and the Puritans both emigrated to America to get freedom. They wanted to enjoy the liberty of worshiping God in the way which they thought was right.

After many years had passed, the colony of Plymouth, or the "Old Colony," was joined to the larger and richer colony of Massachusetts.

The colony of New Hampshire was begun by Englishmen who came here to fish and to buy furs from the Indians. The largest settlement was made at Portsmouth. After a time, some emigrants settled at Londonderry and began to make linen there.

South of Massachusetts, the chief settlements were begun by Mr. Hooker and others who went from Cambridge and other towns. They built Hartford on the Connecticut River.

Later, another colony was begun by English emigrants, at New Haven. The two colonies were united later on, and in this way the state of Connecticut began.

Roger Williams was driven out of Massachusetts. He fled to Narragansett Bay and made a settlement (1636) at a place which he named Providence, in Rhode Island.

Rhode Island was the first colony begun in any part of America where entire religious freedom was given to all persons.

THE FOUR REMAINING SOUTHERN COLONIES

68. Maryland; the king of England gives Maryland to Lord Baltimore. — We have seen that three different kinds of people came to America because they wanted to get the right to worship God in their own way. They were first, the Pilgrims (§ 52); secondly, the Puritans (§ 56); and thirdly, the Quakers (§ 46). We shall now see that many Catholics came from England to America for the same reason.

The English Catholics wished to be able to go to their own church, but they were denied that privilege. Some of them, on that account, resolved to cross the sea, and build homes and churches for themselves in the American wilderness.

The king of England gave to his friend Lord Baltimore, who was a Catholic, a large piece of land cut off from northern Virginia. The king's wife, Queen "Mary,"¹ was

a Catholic, so, to please her, he named the new country Maryland.

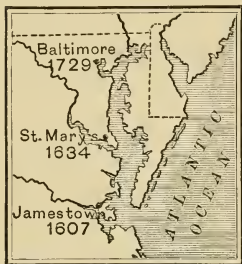
69. How Maryland was first settled (1634). — The first Catholic emigrants who went from England to Maryland (1634) landed near the mouth of the Potomac² River. They began to build a little settle-

ment there which they called St. Mary's.

The Indians liked them and gave them a wigwam in which to hold their religious meetings. This little hut made of bark was the first English Catholic church opened in America.

Lord Baltimore invited Protestants,³ as well as Catholics, to go to Maryland. He gave them all the same rights because he believed that they would live peaceably together.

But later, many settlers moved into Maryland from Virginia and Massachusetts. Some of these newcomers tried to drive out the Catholics. This caused a great deal of trouble for many years.



¹ Marie, but the king called her Mary.

² Potomac (pō-tō'mak).

³ Protestants: those who objected to the Catholic religion.

70. Raising tobacco and wheat; the city of Baltimore.

— The largest and most profitable crop raised in Maryland, like that in Virginia, was tobacco (§ 31).

But after the city of Baltimore was begun (1729), a great many Germans came over to Maryland. They preferred to cultivate grain. They cut down the forests



THE CATHOLIC EMIGRANTS IN MARYLAND

and made themselves farms in the river valleys where there was excellent soil. There they soon began to raise great fields of wheat.

From this time Baltimore became the largest shipping port in the colony of Maryland. Vessels went out from there in great numbers carrying cargoes of grain and tobacco to England.

71. North and South Carolina; new colonies formed south of Virginia (1663). — The time had now come when another slice of Virginia was cut off by the king of England

(§ 68). King Charles the Second gave to eight of his friends (1663) a large territory taken from the southern part of the Atlantic coast. Out of compliment to that sovereign the owners of this tract of land named it Carolina.¹

• Some settlers from Virginia had already moved into this part of the country. Later, a company of English emigrants made settlements farther south, on the coast.

Ten years afterward they moved a short distance and began (1680) to build the city of Charleston (see map).



Then a number of emigrants from France came over and settled in Charleston. They were a people called Huguenots.² The king of France had driven them out because they did not agree with him in re-

gard to religion. Some of their grandchildren became very famous men in the American Revolution. General Marion³ of South Carolina was one, and, among the Huguenots who went north, Paul Revere⁴ was another.

¹ In Latin the king's name was *Carolus*, meaning Charles, so his friends who received the grant of land named it Carolina.

² Huguenots (hū'gē-nōts): they were French Protestants, and the king of France treated them so cruelly that great numbers of them fled to England and others came to America.

³ Marion (mă're-ŋ).

⁴ Revere (rē-veer').

After a good many years had passed, it was thought best to divide the great colony of Carolina into two parts. The upper one was called North Carolina. Its largest town was Wilmington. The lower one was called South Carolina, and its largest town was Charleston.

72. The chief products of North and South Carolina. —

There was not much good farming land in North Carolina, but there were great pine forests. From these pine trees the colonists made tar, pitch, and turpentine. England was constantly building new vessels of various kinds and was glad to buy these products to use in her shipyards.

In South Carolina the soil was better and the planters there employed their slaves (§ 33) in raising great quantities of rice. They exported much of this to Europe.

Later, they began to raise indigo plants for dyeing cloth a deep blue color. The manufacturers of woolens in England were always ready to pay a good price for this dyestuff.

73. The Settlement of Georgia (1733). — Many years after Charleston, South Carolina, was settled (§ 71), General James Oglethorpe¹ of England began a new colony in America.

At that time a great number of poor people in London were kept in prison because they could not pay their debts. General Oglethorpe became much interested in their hard case and resolved to do what he could to help them and others like them. He believed that if they could be sent to America they would become farmers and do well.

He persuaded King George the Second to give a large tract of land between South Carolina and Florida (§ 15)

¹ Oglethorpe (ō'g'l-thorp); see the Life of General Oglethorpe in Montgomery's "Beginner's American History" in this series.

to a company formed in England. That company undertook to send over poor people to settle on the land and cultivate it. In honor of the king, the new colony was named Georgia. The first emigrants who landed there built the town of Savannah¹ on the Savannah River (1733).

74. Making American silk.—General Oglethorpe knew that mulberry trees grew wild in Georgia, and he thought he saw a way by which they might be made profitable.



He said to the colonists, If you take over silk worms to America they will feed on the mulberry leaves, which are their favorite food, and make silk. You will then be able to send it over to England and sell it for a good price.

The new settlers eagerly tried this experiment. They produced a small quantity of the shining silk thread and sent it to London. The queen had a dress made of it which was greatly admired. She wore it on the king's birthday. It was the first American silk gown ever seen in the world. To-day thousands of dresses are made, in the United States, of American silk. In fact, more silk is now manufactured here than in any country in the world except France.

¹ Savannah (sə-văn'ə).

But the people in Georgia soon found that they could not produce silk enough to get a living by it. They then began to buy furs from the Indians and send them to England; others cut timber and shipped it to the West Indies, where there was always a great demand for it.

75. Growth of Georgia; purchase of slaves; fighting the Spaniards. — Besides English emigrants, a good many people from the south of Germany and some from the highlands of Scotland went to Georgia; but the colony grew very slowly. The settlers thought that they should do far better if they had slaves to work for them. At length the company gave them permission to buy slaves. They then began to cultivate plantations and raise rice, like the people of South Carolina (§ 72).

The colony of Georgia was the thirteenth English settlement; it was the last one made in America.

Although it grew so slowly, it did good work. It kept the Spaniards of Florida (§ 15) from moving northward and making trouble.

The Spaniards, as we have seen (§ 17), had once owned the whole of North America. But the English now held all of the Atlantic coast from Maine to Georgia, and they expected in time to get a great deal more of the country.

76. Review. — Maryland was settled by Catholics who wanted to be free to worship God in the way they believed right. They opened the first English Catholic church in America. They gave to all settlers in Maryland the same religious liberty which they asked for themselves.

North and South Carolina were settled later. In North Carolina the colonists made large quantities of tar, pitch,

and turpentine, which they sent to England. In South Carolina the planters raised rice and indigo.

The first emigrants who came to Georgia, which was the last of the English colonies, were poor men who had not succeeded in getting a living in England. They tried to produce silk, but did not make enough of it to amount to much. Later, they bought slaves and became planters, like the people of South Carolina.

77. General Review of the Thirteen American Colonies. —

Let us stop here at Georgia for a moment and look back. We see that more than a hundred and twenty-five years had passed since the English settled Jamestown, Virginia, in 1607 (§ 28).

In the course of that long time we have seen four New England colonies established, — Massachusetts, New Hampshire, Connecticut, and Rhode Island; also four middle colonies, — New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, and Delaware; and five southern colonies, — Virginia, Maryland, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia, or thirteen in all (see map on page 93).

We may compare the history of these colonies to that of a grove of oak trees. If a boy should plant thirteen acorns they would come up very slowly — so very slowly that he might lose all patience; for he would not live to see them get anything like their full growth.

But he could comfort himself with the thought that the grove of oaks he had planted might stand for a thousand years.

Well, so it was with the American colonies which were planted along the seacoast from the eastern borders of Maine to the southern boundary of Georgia. They came

up little by little and gathered strength very slowly. That was because they were like the oaks — they were going to last.

For that reason we believe that a thousand years from now, those thirteen colonies, which afterward became thirteen free states and added more states to them, will not only be standing and growing, but that they will be far stronger and greater even than they are to-day.

V

HOW THE FIRST SETTLERS LIVED IN AMERICA

78. **Building the first houses.** — The first thing the colonists had to do when they landed in the American wilderness was to get a roof over their heads. That was an easy thing, for they simply cut down trees and built log cabins of them.

In order to make these cabins tight and warm they stuffed the cracks between the logs with mud. They made the floor of split logs, with the smooth side up. They used greased paper for windows, because that would let in some light and would keep out the cold.

Then, at one end of the cabin, they built a great open fireplace of rough stones. They made the chimney in the same way, or, if stones were hard to get, they constructed it of sticks and daubed them over with clay.

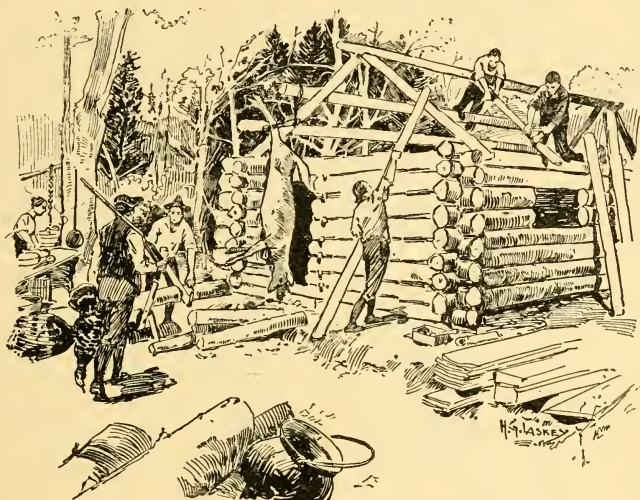
In some cases the new settlers brought over a little furniture with them, but oftentimes they made most of it themselves. It did not take a man, with an ax, very long to manufacture a rough sort of table and a few three-legged stools. Then he hollowed out some blocks of wood for plates and dishes¹; and he made a very

¹ Such dishes were called trenchers, and the boys of Winchester School, the oldest public school in England, eat their bread and cheese from them to-day, just as they did when the first settlers landed in Virginia.

comfortable bed of a pile of sweet-smelling evergreen boughs or some dry leaves.

79. Clearing the forest and planting corn. — After the emigrants got fairly settled in their snug log homes, they set out to plant corn.

If they had time, they began by cutting down the trees over a good-sized piece of ground. But when that



BUILDING A LOG CABIN

would take too long, they girdled the trees, as they had seen the Indians do. That was soon done by cutting a deep gash through the bark around the trunk of each tree.

The gash prevented the sap from going up into the branches, so that these trees did not leaf out in the spring. Then, as there was no shade cast by them, the sun shone down on the ground and ripened the corn which had been planted there.

When the girdled and leafless trees became dead and dry, the colonists would burn them, and so make a large, open field.

80. Life in a log cabin.—The people who lived in these rough homes, which they had made themselves with no tools but an ax, always had plenty to eat, and plenty too that was good. They did not have to go far to get food. The streams were full of trout and other fish, and the woods were full of deer and various kinds of game. Wild grapes grew in abundance in the forests, and the Indians showed the settlers how to make maple sugar.

When the corn was large enough to eat, the colonists had green corn for dinner, or, by mixing beans with it, they made that excellent dish which the Indians called succotash.

After the corn became dry and hard the farmers pounded it into meal, and it was made into mush for breakfast.

All cooking was done at first over an open wood fire. They kindled a fire by striking sparks with a flint and steel. They caught these sparks, as they fell, on a piece of old rag, and then blew them to a blaze. That of course took time and patience, but time and patience were common in those days. If in a hurry, they sent a boy to borrow a panful of live coals from a neighbor. It was more than two hundred years after the Pilgrims landed in Massachusetts before any one ever scratched a match or lighted a fire with one.

The first colonists who came to America did not bring any animals with them; but those who came afterward brought horses, cattle, sheep, and hogs (§ 19). Besides these creatures, they brought over hens and chickens, and

hives of honeybees. The Indians had never seen this kind of bee, and they called it the "white man's fly."

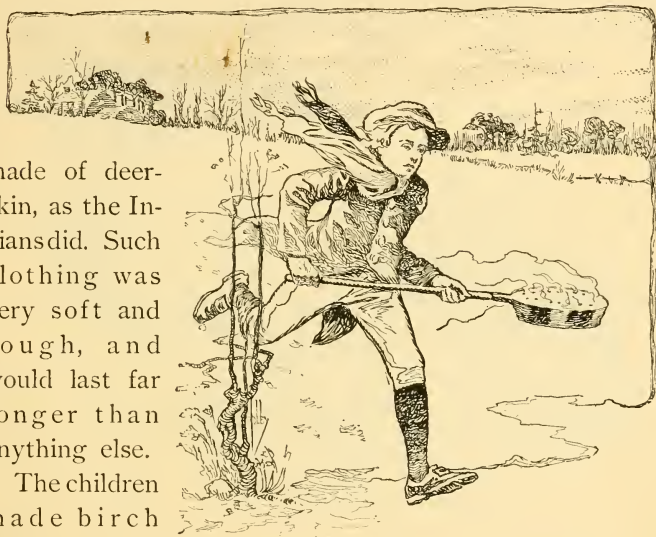
As soon as the farmers began to raise sheep their wives and daughters spun the wool into yarn and then wove it into cloth. But for a long time the men wore clothes

made of deer-skin, as the Indians did. Such clothing was very soft and tough, and would last far longer than anything else.

The children made birch brooms for the kitchen, and

whittled out wooden spoons for the table. In fact, give a Yankee boy a jackknife and he could cut his way through the world.

81. Where the colonists built their first settlements. — All of the first settlers in America built their homes on the seashore or on the bank of some stream emptying into the sea. They did this so that vessels might come to them from England.



BORROWING FIRE FROM A NEIGHBOR

In some parts of the country, especially in New England, the colonists built their houses close to each other and so formed little villages. In other cases, especially in the South, they lived on farms or plantations quite a long distance apart.

82. How the colonists got from place to place. — When the people wished to go from one place to another through the woods they followed the Indian trails (§§ 21, 62). In the course of time they made these trails wide enough for a horse to walk in; still later, they widened them so that they could get carts and wagons through them.

When they wanted to go from one colony to another, — for instance, from New York to Philadelphia, — they traveled, when they could, by small sailing vessels.

After a good many years had passed, the colonists began to make journeys in a rough kind of stagecoach. It usually went at about three miles an hour. Now we can easily go as far in thirty minutes by express train as Benjamin Franklin or George Washington could go in a day over the bad roads which then existed. But then they had this great advantage — the world seemed much larger to them than it does to us, when we get over the ground so quickly.

83. Public schools; what the colonists had to read. — The people in the northern colonies soon established public schools for their children, where they could learn to read and write; but at the South the children of the poor generally grew up without being able to do either. Washington was taught his letters by the man who took care of the little church near by, and Thomas Jefferson went to a school kept on a tobacco plantation. The

colonists generally had very few books beside the Bible ; but those they did have they read over and over until they knew them by heart.

The first printing press in the country was set up at Cambridge, Massachusetts (1638), not very long after the first house was built in Boston (§ 56). But it was more



WHERE THOMAS JEFFERSON WENT TO SCHOOL

than sixty years after that before the first American newspaper¹ was published — and that was not published very often.

But although people then did not spend much time in reading the news, they found out how to do three good things. First of all, they learned to use their eyes, and to see for themselves ; next, they learned to use their hands, and to work for themselves ; last of all, they learned to use their brains, and to think for themselves.

¹ This was the *Boston News Letter*, which appeared in 1704.

For these reasons the colonists were soon able to do more in a year in America than most of the people in the "old country" could do in ten.

They kept good order too, and made things very uncomfortable for wrongdoers. They put tramps and drunkards in the stocks; they made thieves stand in the pillory;¹



STOCKS AND PILLORY

they flogged greater rascals; and they made haste to hang all those that they thought were too bad to let live.

84. **How the colonists got on in the world.** — By far the greater part of the emigrants who came to America were poor men. Ninety-nine out of a hundred brought over nothing more than the clothes they stood up in. But they did not stay poor. By keeping their eyes open, their

¹ Pillory (pīl'ō-ry).

hands constantly at work, and their brains busy, they covered the country with farms and plantations. They had broad fields of grain and tobacco, and great herds of cattle and flocks of sheep.

On the seacoast, where there were good ports, the towns grew larger and richer, and gave promise that some day they would become great cities. If you look on the map of the United States on page opposite page 305, you will see that they have kept their promise.

85. How the rich lived. — As time went on, a good many of the tobacco planters of Virginia and Maryland grew rich. So, too, did the merchants and shipowners of New York, Philadelphia, Boston, Baltimore, Charleston, and Savannah.

These wealthy men often built fine large houses, some of which are still standing—and noble old mansions they are. Those who built them bought handsome furniture and silverware in England, to make their homes here beautiful, and they dressed in grand style, in silk and velvet.

Their houses often had beautiful gardens, which were fenced in by neatly trimmed hedges such as you can see at Mount Vernon now.

These rich people kept stables filled with horses. They also kept negro slaves to work on the land, and to wait on them in their elegant homes.

Sometimes one or two of these faithful house servants would be buried near their masters and mistresses. In the old churchyard at Cambridge, Massachusetts, is the carved gravestone of a great lady who once lived in one of the houses we have been describing. A New England

poet who lived in that house, which is still preserved, in speaking of that gravestone says,—

At her feet and at her head
Lies a slave to attend the dead,
But their dust is white as hers.¹

There was one thing, however, that all the people in America, whether rich or poor, agreed in perfectly,— that was that they loved their country.

Most of them, indeed, loved it so much that, when the time came, they showed that they were ready to fight for it and to die for it.

¹ Longfellow, "In the Churchyard at Cambridge."

VI

WARS WITH THE INDIANS

86. **The colonists and the red men.** — The white people who came to America generally tried to treat the Indians fairly. We have already seen that the Dutch bought Manhattan Island from the Indians (§ 38), and that William Penn bought from them the land on which he built Philadelphia (§ 49).

So too in New England, and in the other colonies, the settlers usually bought the land from the red men, as Roger Williams did when he began to build Providence (§ 66).

It is true that the white men did not give much for the land, oftentimes only a few dozen hatchets and one or two bundles of red blankets. But we should remember that these things might be worth more to the Indians than four or five hundred acres of forest would be. They were generally quite as glad to make the trade as the English were, so both sides felt satisfied.

On the other hand, there were times when it was very difficult for the colonists and the Indians to understand each other. This sometimes led to quarrels and to fighting.

Then again there were greedy white men who cheated the Indians when they traded with them for their furs.

There were others who would steal corn from them (§ 55), or who would get them drunk and then manage to rob them of their lands.

These things were always certain to make trouble, and in the end they might cause war.

87. Indian war in Virginia ; the Pequot War in Connecticut. — The first war of this kind broke out in Virginia (1622). At that time the Indians came suddenly upon the colonists in the night, and killed a great many of them.

The first emigrants who went to Connecticut (§ 62) suffered greatly from a tribe of Indians in that country. The new settlers had hardly got their log houses built when the Pequots,¹ who were the fiercest savages in that part of New England, attacked them (1637). They seem to have thought that the white men had come from Massachusetts to take their lands from them.

The people of Hartford (§ 62), and the towns near it, loaded their guns and marched against the Indians. At the same time, the colonists of Boston sent men to help the Connecticut settlers. The white men then surrounded the Pequot fort² in the night and set fire to it.

Many of the Indians were burned to death ; others were shot as they rushed wildly out of the flames. In the end nearly the whole Pequot tribe was killed. After that the Connecticut people had very little trouble with the Indians. In fact all the colonists in New England were free from attack for nearly forty years.

88. "King Philip's" War (1675). — Then the most terrible of all Indian wars broke out. It began in southern

¹ Pequot (pē'kwöt).

² This fort was near Mystic, on Long Island Sound, Connecticut.

Massachusetts. It came about in this way: When the good chief Massasoit (§§ 54, 65) died, he left a son who called himself "King Philip." He was a very different man from his father, for he did not like the white people.

He saw that they were constantly getting large slices of the Indian land, and that the time seemed to be coming when the red men would no longer have any homes in Massachusetts.

He believed that all the Indians must band together and fight, or else be driven from the country. So he went about from tribe to tribe and persuaded the chiefs to join him in an attack on the English.

"King Philip" lived not very far from

Mount Hope near Narragansett Bay, close to Rhode Island (see map). He made his plans to have the war begin in that neighborhood.

Everything was done secretly. Not one of the farmers in that part of the country suspected for a moment that the Indians were getting ready to fall upon them. That was the red man's way of fighting. He had learned it in the woods, from the panther or wild cat, which creeps up silently behind its victim, springs upon it like a flash, and strikes its terrible claws deep into the flesh.



"KING PHILIP'S" WAR

One Sunday afternoon (1675) two white men who lived near Swansea,¹ Massachusetts (see map on page 83), were walking quietly home from church when they were shot dead by some Indians who had hidden themselves in the bushes. This was the commencement of "King Philip's" War.

89. The war spreads; "King Philip" is killed. — Then "King Philip's" warriors rushed upon the villages farther east in Plymouth Colony. Next they attacked those in western Massachusetts, in the valley of the Connecticut River.

The Indians burned twelve towns to ashes, and partly burned a great many more.² At one time they became so bold that they ventured to come almost in sight of Boston.

Altogether, this was the most dreadful Indian war which the colonists had ever been engaged in. It continued to rage for more than a year. In that time something like a thousand white men were killed, their homes were destroyed and their wives and children carried off prisoners by the savages.

But at last Captain Benjamin Church, of Plymouth, hunted "King Philip" down, just as fox hunters in England run down a fox. The captain took the chief's wife and little boy captive. Both of them were sent to the Bermuda Islands and sold as slaves. There they were probably worked to death or whipped to death on one of the English plantations.

¹ Swansea (swõn'sě).

² Among these villages were Deerfield, Brookfield, Springfield, Lancaster, Groton, and Hadley.

“King Philip” himself was not yet taken, but he lost all heart, and no longer cared whether he lived or died. Not long afterward he was shot; then his head was cut off and carried to Plymouth and set up in the village on a high pole.

“King Philip’s” death brought the war to an end. It had cost so much that it left many of the farmers very poor. In Plymouth Colony the people labored for years



“KING PHILIP’S” WAR

to earn money to pay off the war debt. But they were not the kind of men to complain. They kept steadily at work, until, in the course of time, they paid every cent of it.

90. Pontiac makes war on the English colonists (1763). — Long after “King Philip’s” death (§ 89), Pontiac,¹ a western Indian chief, attacked the colonists (1763). He called himself the ruler of all the tribes in the Michigan

¹ Pontiac (pŏn'tī-ăk).

Country. He was fond of the French people who lived in Canada, but he hated the English, and, most of all, the English soldiers.

Pontiac called the western savages together and made a speech to them. "Come, now," said he; "let us load our guns, sharpen our hatchets, and kill off all these dogs dressed in red." The savages obeyed him. They began by burning farmhouses and murdering the inhabitants. Then they attacked Detroit,¹ and pushed their way on as far east as Pittsburg, Pennsylvania. But they never got any farther, for the white men, after hard fighting, defeated them and made them lay down their guns and beg for peace.

91. The Indians return the white children they had carried off. — The western Indians had, at different times, stolen many white children and carried them off to their wigwams in the woods. After Pontiac was beaten (§ 90) and peace was made, the red men brought back these captives and restored them to their parents.

But some of the white boys and girls had grown to be so fond of Indian life that they did not want to give it up. Others had been away so long that they had forgotten all about their parents and their old homes.

One joyful mother recovered her daughter, who had been carried away by the savages when she was very young. The girl did not know her, and hardly remembered an English word. The poor woman was in great distress. But the English general in command, who was standing by, thought that he could help her. He said, "Sing to your daughter the old song which you used to sing to her when she was a little child."

¹ Detroit (de-troit').



MOTHER RECOVERING HER DAUGHTER

The mother began to sing; her daughter listened attentively for a few moments, then she burst into tears and rushed into her arms. At last mother and child had found each other.

92. Review. — The English colonists who settled America had a number of fierce wars with the Indians. The first one was in Virginia. The next was in Connecticut, when the Pequot Indians attacked the people living on the Connecticut River.

But the most terrible Indian war broke out in Massachusetts when "King Philip" rose and tried to kill off the people of that colony.

Many years later, Pontiac, a western chief, attacked Detroit and carried the war as far east as Pittsburg, Pennsylvania. In every one of these wars the Indians were finally defeated and forced to make peace.

VII

WHAT THE FRENCH DID IN THE WEST

93. **The French and the Indians in Canada.**—We must now leave the English colonists for a short time and see what the French were doing in Canada and the West.

You remember that shortly after the English began to build Jamestown, Virginia (1607), some Frenchmen went up the St. Lawrence River and erected the first houses (1608) at Quebec (§ 25).

Part of the Frenchmen who then went to Canada were fur traders. They came to America to buy beaver skins from the Indians and send them back to France to sell.

But a number of Frenchmen who went to Canada were Catholic priests. They did not cross the sea to make money or to get land. They came because they wished to do all in their power to help the Indians.

Some of these priests pushed on westward until they reached the northern shore of Lake Huron¹ (see map on page 93). There they built a little cabin of birch bark, and settled down to make themselves at home among the red men.

The Indians of that part of the country soon became very fond of the priests, or Black Gowns, as they called them. They liked to visit the little cabin and see the

¹ Huron (hū'rōn).

strange things it contained. What astonished them most of all was a clock which the priests had brought from France.

They called it the Captain, for to them the clock seemed alive. The Indians would sit patiently on the ground and wait, silent and motionless, to hear the clock strike. They said, "When the Captain strikes twelve, he says, 'Put the kettle on for dinner'; and when he strikes four, he says to us Indians, 'Now get up and go home.'"

The Black Gowns and the Canadian red men lived in this way, as friends, for some time. Then the savage tribes of New York¹ made war upon them and broke up the little settlement. But they were not able to drive the French out of Canada.

94. The French set out to find a great river.—Year by year the French priests and the fur traders kept going farther and farther west. As they went they would make small settlements at different points. When they had got as far as Mackinaw² (see map on page 93), they heard of a great river. The Indians there told them that it was far beyond them, in the direction of the setting sun, and that it would take many days to get to it. They called the great river the Mississippi, or "Father of Waters."

Two young Frenchmen, one a fur trader³ and the other a priest, set out to find the famous river. They thought, from what they heard about it, that perhaps it flowed into the Pacific Ocean, and so might open a way for them to get to China.

¹ These were the Iroquois (īr'ō-kwoi') Indians, or "Five Nations"; they hated the Canadian Indians, and frequently made war upon them and upon the French.

² Mackinaw (măk'ī-nă).

³ The fur trader was named Joliet (jō'le-ět), and the priest was Father Marquette (mär-kět').

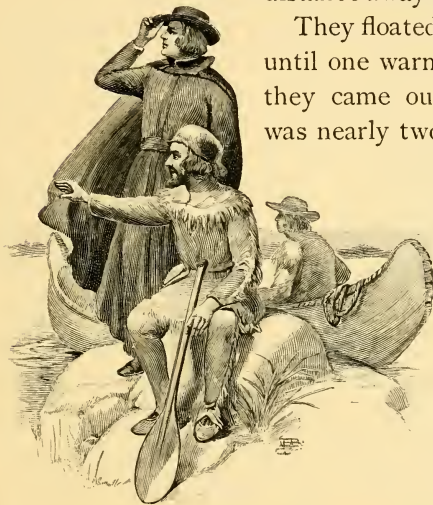
They started in their birch-bark canoes and paddled across Lake Michigan to Green Bay, Wisconsin. Then they went up the Fox River as far as they could and pulled their canoes on shore. Next they picked them up, for they were as light as paper, and carried them across to the Wisconsin River, which was a very short distance away (see map on page 93).

They floated down the Wisconsin until one warm summer day (1673) they came out into a river which was nearly two miles wide. Then

they felt sure that they must now be on the Mississippi itself.

95. What the two Frenchmen saw on the great river. — They resolved to drift downward with the current and see where it would

take them. Day after day they moved noiselessly onward toward the south. They passed miles and miles of level, grass-grown prairie land; they passed more miles still of great forests. They listened to the cry of strange birds in the woods, and at night they heard the howling of packs of wolves. Now and then they caught sight of a few Indians on the banks of the river, or saw herds of deer and of buffalo come down to the water to drink.



JOLIET AND FATHER MARQUETTE ON THE MISSISSIPPI

Keeping on and on, they came, after nearly three weeks, to the place where the Spaniard, De Soto, was buried (§ 15). Still drifting down the stream they at length reached the mouth of the Arkansas¹ River. There they stopped, for some friendly Indians told them it would not be safe for them to go farther, because the savages south of them were very fierce and hated strangers.

By this time the Frenchmen had made up their minds that the Mississippi did not empty into the Pacific Ocean. Then they decided to turn back and make their way to Lake Michigan and on to Canada.

They carried great news to their friends in Canada ; for they were the first white men who had ever made a voyage from the north down the "Father of Waters."

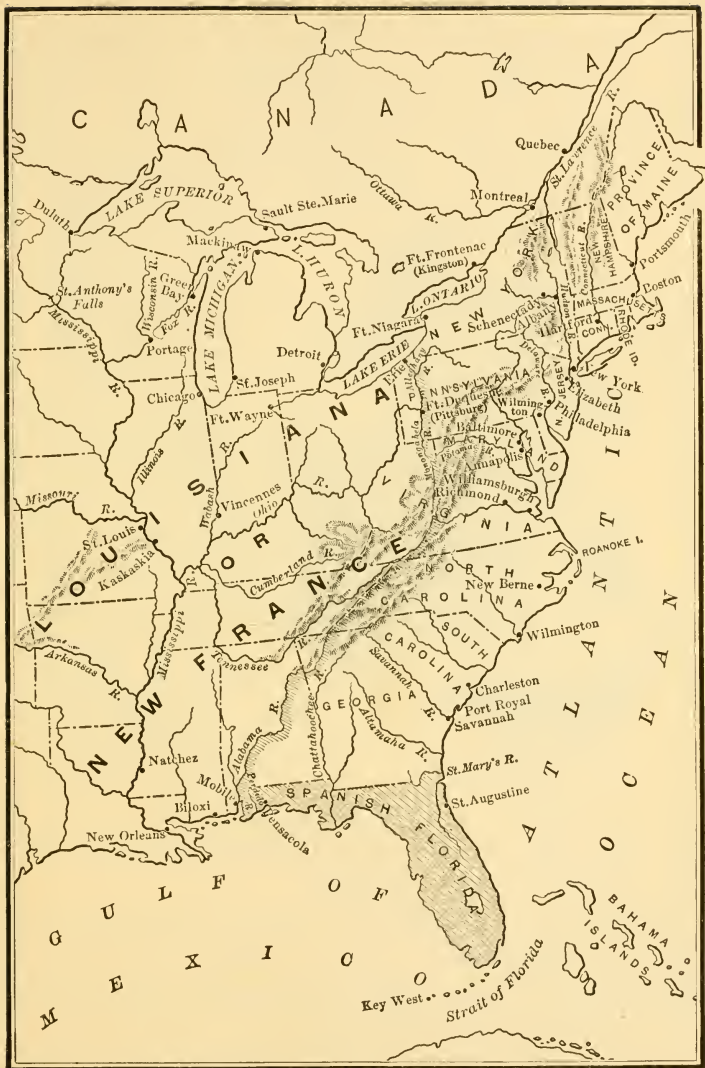
96. La Salle goes down the Mississippi to its mouth ; he takes possession of the Louisiana Country.—A number of years later a Frenchman named La Salle² determined to complete the work his two countrymen had begun.

He built a little sailing vessel on Niagara River, a short distance above the Falls. It was the first vessel of the kind which ever floated on the waters of Lake Erie, or on any of the Great Lakes west of it.

Then he sailed to Green Bay, Wisconsin (§ 94). There he left his vessel to load up with furs while he, with his companions, went in canoes to the southern end of Lake Michigan (see map on page 93). They landed there and crossed over on foot to a branch of the Illinois River. Then La Salle and his men launched their canoes again, and paddled down to the Mississippi.

¹ Arkansas (är'kän-sä').

² La Salle (lä säl').



THE THIRTEEN ENGLISH COLONIES, WITH PART OF LOUISIANA AND THE FRENCH EXPLORATIONS AND SETTLEMENTS IN THE WEST

It was winter time, and the great river was full of cakes of floating ice; but La Salle was a man who loved danger, and he kept bravely on.

At last, on a sunny day in April (1682), he smelt the salt air of the sea. Looking ahead he caught sight of the tossing waves of the Gulf of Mexico.



LA SALLE SETS UP POSTS

There he landed with his men, and they set up a strong post to which they fastened the name of Louis the Fourteenth, who was then king of France. In his name, La Salle took possession of the entire valley through which the Mississippi flows, together with all the rivers on the east and on the west which empty into it. In honor of King Louis, he called the country Louisiana.

Many years later, the French began to build two cities on the Gulf of Mexico, — one was Mobile (1702) on the Alabama River, the other was the great city of New Orleans (1718) on the Mississippi.

If you look on the map on page 95 you will see what an immense territory Louisiana was then, and how



THE LOUISIANA COUNTRY CLAIMED BY LA SALLE FOR FRANCE

much larger it was than the state of Louisiana is now. In length that territory extended from one end of the Mississippi to the other; while in breadth it reached from the Alleghany Mountains clear across to the Rocky Mountains.

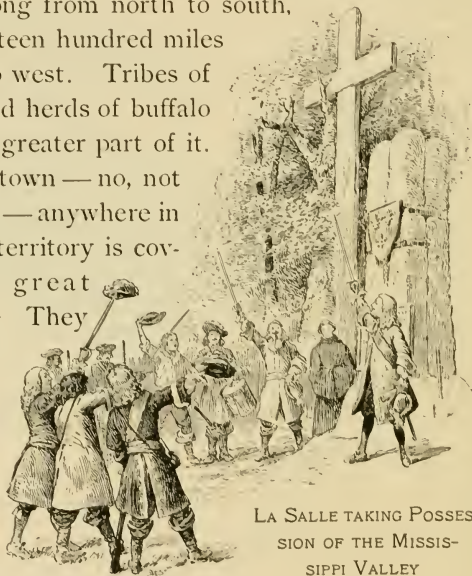
When the French took possession of it, that whole region was simply a great V-shaped wilderness, about two thousand miles long from north to south,

and more than fifteen hundred miles wide from east to west. Tribes of savage Indians and herds of buffalo roamed over the greater part of it.

There was not a town — no, not even a farmhouse — anywhere in it. To-day that territory is covered by twenty great American states.¹ They

are bound together by a network of railways which run through hundreds of cities and towns, and across thousands

and thousands of farms. In that country, where at that time the only white men were a few French fur traders



LA SALLE TAKING POSSESSION OF THE MISSISSIPPI VALLEY

¹ The twenty states are Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, Kentucky, Tennessee, West Virginia, Mississippi, Alabama, Louisiana, Minnesota, Wisconsin, Iowa, Missouri, Arkansas, North Dakota, South Dakota, Nebraska, Kansas, and Texas, besides parts of five other states.

and priests, more than forty millions of Americans now have their homes.

97. Review. — The French in Canada pushed their way toward the west, and in time discovered the Mississippi River.

A number of years afterward, La Salle went down that river to its mouth. He named the whole Mississippi Valley Louisiana, in honor of Louis the Fourteenth, who was then king of France, and he took possession of it all for that king.

VIII

THE ENGLISH COLONISTS IN AMERICA FIGHT THE FRENCH AND THE INDIANS

98. **The first French and Indian War (1689).**—The English colonists on the Atlantic coast soon heard that La Salle had taken possession of Louisiana for the king of France (§ 96). They saw then that they must either fight the French or give up to them all of America west of the Alleghany Mountains.

While they were making preparations for war, a band of Indian warriors came down from Canada into New York. They got nearly as far south as Albany,¹ and burned the little village of Schenectady² (see map on page 99). At about the same time French Canadians and bands of savages made their way through the woods and destroyed several English settlements in Maine and New Hampshire.

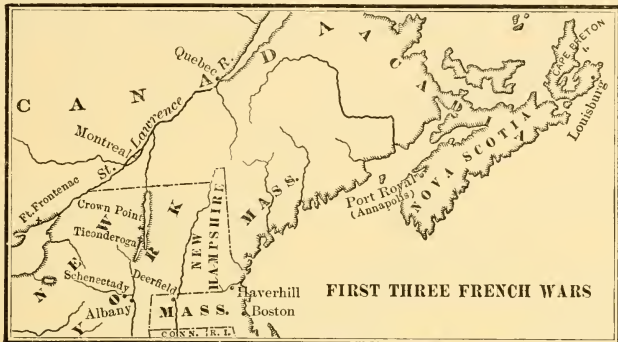
99. **How a woman got away from the Indians.**—Later, the Canadian Indians grew so bold that they attacked Haverhill,³ Massachusetts, a town not very far north of Boston (see map on page 99). They killed a number of people, and carried off Mrs. Hannah Dustin, intending to sell her as a slave in Canada.

¹ Albany (aɪ'ba-nī).

³ Haverhill (hā'ver-īl).

² Schenectady (ske-něk'ta-dě).

But Mrs. Dustin was a brave woman, and she resolved to escape from her captors. After the savages had gone to sleep at night, she got up very softly and managed to take their hatchets from them without waking them. Then, with the help of another white woman and of a



boy, who had been carried away prisoners with her, she split the heads of the sleeping Indians and got safely back to her home again.

100. The second and third French and Indian wars (1702-1713; 1744-1748); the Yankees take Louisburg. — In the course of the next war, the Canadian French and Indians attacked Deerfield, in northwestern Massachusetts, and burned it. But, on the other hand, the New England colonists beat the French in northeastern Canada or Acadia,¹ and took a part of the country from them. The king of England then gave it the name of Nova Scotia² (see map above).

¹ Acadia (ā-kā'dī-ā).

² Nova Scotia (nō'vā skō'shī-ā); the name means New Scotland.

In the third war with the French, Colonel¹ William Pepperrell² of Maine did a most remarkable thing. He set out with a few thousand Yankee farmers and fishermen to attack the great stone fort at Louisburg, on Cape Breton³ Island (see map on page 99).

This was the strongest fort which the French possessed on the coast of America. They had spent twenty-five years in building it. They felt so proud of it that they named it Louisburg, in honor of Louis the Fourteenth, king of France, and they dared the English colonists to march against it and try to take it.

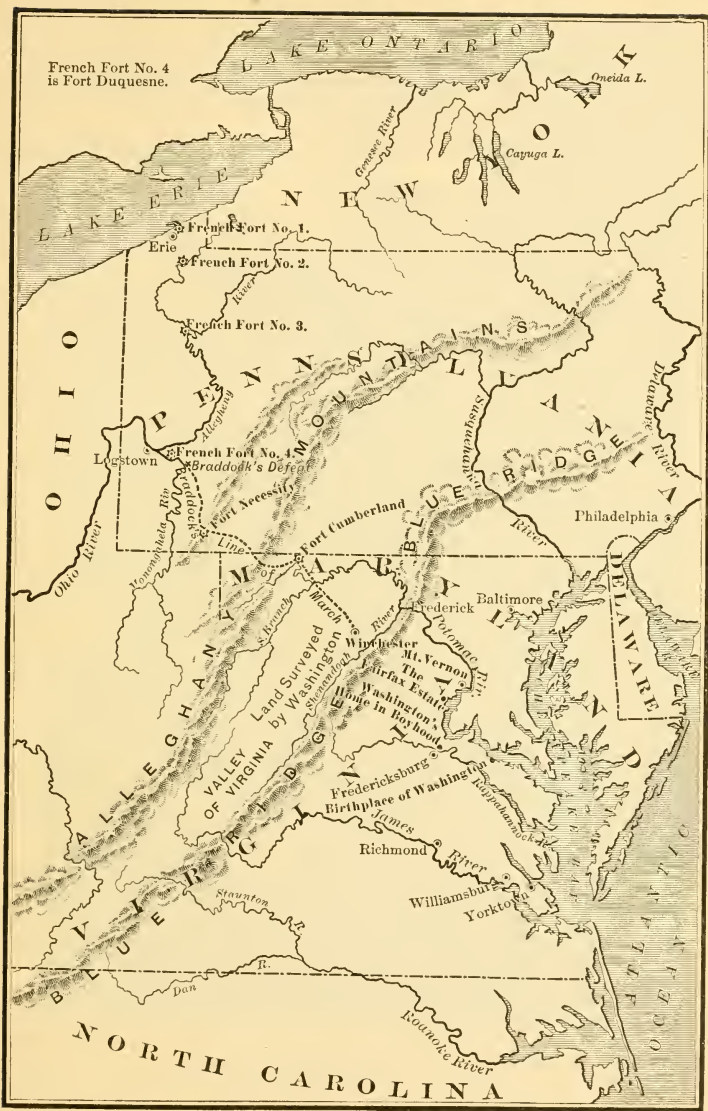
Well, the Yankees, with the help of some British war ships, did take it. The king of England was delighted when he heard the news. In fact, his joy was so great over the astonishing victory that he gave Colonel Pepperrell the right to put the English title of Sir⁴ before his name.

He was the first New England man who had received such an honor. Everybody was glad he got it, and the people always took off their hats and bowed very low whenever they met Sir William Pepperrell, the hero of Louisburg.

101. The fourth and last great French and Indian War (1754-1763). — But the French had no thought yet of giving up the fight. They meant to own all America, and to drive out the English, if they could. So they built forts at New Orleans and at other places on the Mississippi River. Not satisfied with doing that, they

¹ Colonel (kûr'nel). ² Pepperrell (pĕp'ĕr-il). ³ Breton (brĕt'ŏn).

⁴ Sir: this is a title given in England to a person who ranks next to a nobleman.



FRENCH FORTS AT THE EAST

commenced building several more in that part of the country west of the Alleghany Mountains where the Ohio River begins (see map on page 101).

102. The governor of Virginia sends a messenger to the French (1753).— These new forts were built on land which then belonged to Virginia. The governor of that colony sent a young man to tell the French that they must give up the forts and leave that part of the country.

The young man's name was George Washington.¹ He had learned how to measure land.² He was fond of life in the woods, and he was fond too of adventure, especially when there was a spice of danger in it.

He was glad to go on the governor's errand. He dressed himself in deerskin clothes, such as the Indians wore, and set off on his journey of five hundred miles on foot through the great forest (see map on page 101).

When he arrived at the fort where the commander of the French had his headquarters, he was well received. But that officer told Washington that he should not pay any attention to the governor's request.

The next year (1754) the governor of Virginia sent Washington with a company of soldiers to drive out the French. But the enemy had the most men, so they forced the Virginians to turn back.

103. The French and the Indians defeat General Braddock (1755).— A year later (1755) General Braddock, a

¹ See the Life of Washington in Montgomery's "Beginner's American History" in this series.

² Washington was born February 22, 1732; he was now twenty-one. He was an excellent surveyor, and surveyed thousands of acres of land in Virginia (see map on page 101).



WASHINGTON SURVEYING LAND IN VIRGINIA

brave English officer, started to see what he could do. He led a fine army of British soldiers against Fort Duquesne,¹ which the French had built on the Ohio River (see map on page 101). Washington, with some Virginia men, went with General Braddock, who knew nothing about fighting battles in the American woods.

Washington told the English general that the French and Indians would hide in the forest and would fire at his men from behind the trees. Braddock laughed at the warning and began his march. The British soldiers made a grand show, with their bright red coats and still brighter bayonets glistening in the rays of the morning sun, as they moved along through the woods.

Everything went well with them until they had come almost to the fort, when a shower of bullets burst out from the underbrush. No one could see who fired them. The British did not know which way to turn or which way to aim their guns. In a short time the greater part of Braddock's splendid army was cut to pieces.

General Braddock himself was fatally shot. He died a few days afterwards, and was buried at night under a pile of dead leaves in the midst of the wilderness. Washington had four bullets go through his coat, but he escaped unhurt.

104. Fort Duquesne taken at last ; it gets a new name (1758). — The French were full of glee over their victory. They boasted that they would wipe the English name from the map of America and would call the whole country New France.

But William Pitt, who was a great man in England, now got the management of the war. He did not fight

¹ Fort Duquesne (dü'-kân').

himself, but he knew how to pick out men who could fight. They soon made the French sing a different song.

Pitt sent over a new British army to take Fort Duquesne (§ 103). When the enemy heard that they were coming, they gave up their stronghold and fled. The English then set to work and built a new fort at the same point and named it Fort Pitt, in honor of William Pitt. Part



A PART OF FORT PITT; IT IS STILL STANDING

of that fort is still standing. Around it grew up the city of Pittsburg — one of the greatest places for making iron and steel that there is in the world.

105. General Wolfe climbs the heights at Quebec (1759). — The next move which William Pitt made was to send a British army under General Wolfe¹ to take the French

¹ Wolfe (wōlf).

city of Quebec,¹ the capital of Canada (§ 93). That seemed almost impossible, for Quebec stands on a high, rocky bluff overlooking the St. Lawrence River, and a few soldiers could hold the place against attack (see map on page 99).

General Montcalm,² the French commander at Quebec, was on the lookout for the English. He slept in his clothes for weeks, so that he might always be ready to fight.

For a long time General Wolfe tried in vain to capture

¹ Quebec (kwē-běk').

² Montcalm (mōn'käl'm').



THE ENGLISH CLIMBING THE HEIGHTS AT QUEBEC

Quebec. At last he made up his mind that the only way he could do it would be to climb up from the river to the top of the heights.

At that time his fleet of war ships was some miles above the city. One night Wolfe and his men embarked in boats and silently floated down the St. Lawrence. When they came to a little cove in the bank, about three miles above Quebec, they stopped. There they landed, taking care to make as little noise as possible. Then, one by one, the soldiers, seizing hold of the bushes and the branches of the trees, climbed slowly up to the top of the steep bluff.

When the sun rose, General Montcalm could hardly believe what he saw. There, drawn up in a thin, red line, stood the British army before Quebec.

106. The battle of Quebec (1759).— Soon a terrible battle began. The English fought to get into the city; the French fought to keep them out.

General Wolfe was shot through the breast. As he lay dying on the ground, he heard some of his men shout, "They run; see how they run!" "Who run?" asked Wolfe in a feeble voice. "The French," was the answer. "Then," said Wolfe, "I die in peace." These were his last words.

General Montcalm also received his death wound. He asked the doctor who stood by him, "How long have I to live?" "Not many hours," replied the doctor. "So much the better," said Montcalm; "for I am happy not to live to see the surrender of Quebec."

Not very long after the death of these two brave commanders, the French opened the gates of Quebec to the

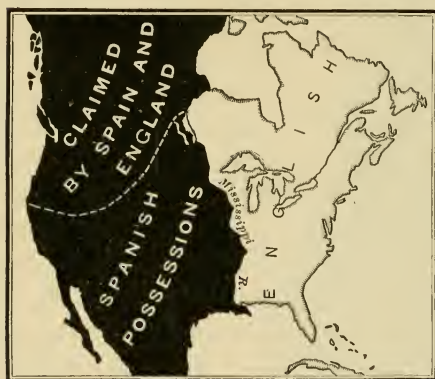
English. They marched in, and took possession of the city. They have held it ever since.

107. The end of the great war between England and France, 1763.—The fall of Quebec (§ 106) marked the end of the great war in America between the English and the French. It had been going on, as we have seen, for many years (§ 98).¹

The children in America who heard the first gun fired in that contest (1689) were all white-haired men and women

now. But they shouted with joy when the news came that at last the English flag had been raised over the French fort at Quebec (1759).

Peace was made in 1763. France was forced to give to England all of Canada and the



NORTH AMERICA AFTER THE TREATY OF 1763

country west of the Alleghany Mountains as far as the Mississippi River.

The king of France would have been compelled to give up all the rest of the Louisiana Country (§ 96) to England if he had then owned it. But it so happened that, before the great war was over, he had secretly given

¹ The war began in 1689, and continued, with intervals of peace, for over seventy years.

New Orleans, with the French territory beyond the Mississippi as far as the Rocky Mountains, to Spain.

On the other hand, Spain had given Florida (§§ 15, 17) to England. That meant that England had now got possession of the whole of North America except the part which the Spanish king held, that is, New Orleans on the Mississippi River and the country lying between that river and the Pacific Ocean.

By looking on the map on page 108, you can see at once that France had lost everything. You will also see just how much England had gained, and how much Spain still possessed.

108. Review.—After La Salle had taken possession of the Louisiana Country for King Louis the Fourteenth of France, war broke out in America between France and England. The object of the war was to decide which nation should become owner of a very large part of America.

In the course of this war the Canadian Indians, who were friends of the French, destroyed many English settlements in New York and New England.

On the other hand, the American colonists, with some help from England, took possession of Nova Scotia and captured the great French fort at Louisburg.

Later, General Braddock, an English commander, tried to take Fort Duquesne, a French stronghold on the Ohio River; but he was badly defeated by the French and Indians.

The English afterward got possession of the place and built Fort Pitt there. The city of Pittsburg grew up around that fort.

The next year (1759) General Wolfe captured the great French stronghold of Quebec, the capital of Canada.

In 1763 France made a treaty of peace with England. By that treaty or agreement England came into possession of all the territory which France then owned in North America.

By looking on the map on page 108 you will see that the whole of North America was now divided between England and Spain.

England held Canada and the remainder of the country south of it, except New Orleans, as far west as the Mississippi River. Spain held New Orleans and all the country west of the Mississippi. France no longer had a foot of land left on the entire continent.

IX

HOW THE KING OF ENGLAND RULED AMERICA

109. **The king's charters and what those charters promised.** — When the first English colonists went to America to live, the king of England gave them the land on which they settled.

He always made the gift in writing. That writing was called a *charter*.¹ The charter told the colonists, first of all, how large a piece of land they could have. It might be as big as Virginia or Pennsylvania, or it might be as small as Rhode Island, which was the smallest territory he ever gave.

Next, the charter told the settlers what they could do on the land they had received.

One thing should be particularly remembered. It is this: every charter promised that the English who came to America should have the same rights that the people had in England. That promise meant that those who crossed the Atlantic to build up homes in the wilderness were not to lose anything by going to a new country. This was only fair, for they had hard and dangerous work.

¹ Charter: this word, at first, meant simply a piece of paper or parchment (§110); later, it came to mean the king's gift of land, — or of something else, — because he wrote his promise on such a piece of paper or parchment.

The colonists had good memories, and they never forgot that the king had made that promise, in writing, in their charters.

For that reason they said, We have the right to take part in making the laws by which we are governed, because in England the people do that. We brought the same power here, and we have the king's word for it, signed with his name and stamped with his great red seal.

You will recollect that in Virginia the people soon began to help make the laws (§ 35). So they did, in the end, in every one of the thirteen American colonies. That right they never gave up; in fact, the king never really tried to make them give it up.

110. Governor Andros and the Connecticut Charter. — After a time, the king took back most of the charters. But in one case, when he tried to do it, he failed. He sent over Sir Edmund Andros¹ to be governor of New England, New York, and New Jersey (1686). He told the new governor to get the charter of the colony of Connecticut. The governor went to Hartford and ordered the people to give up their charter. But they had no intention of doing anything of the kind.

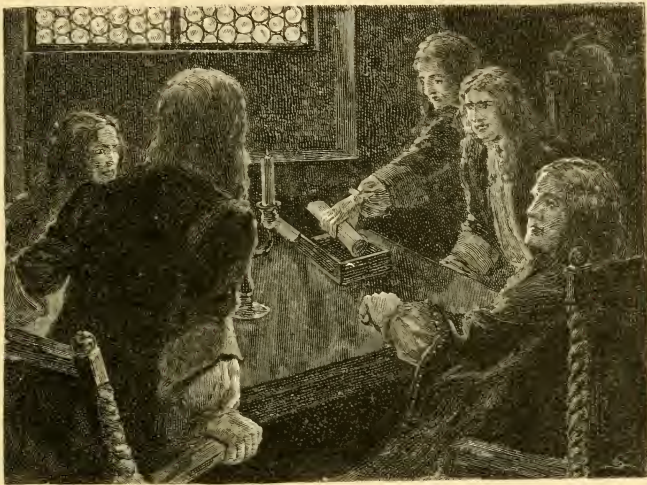
However, one evening when Sir Edmund met the chief men of Hartford, he let them know in a very decided way that he must have what the king had commanded him to get.

At length the charter was brought in and handed to the governor. After looking at it he laid it down for a moment on the table. Suddenly all the candles were blown out. When they were lighted again, the precious

¹ Andros (an'dros).

piece of parchment¹ was nowhere to be found. Captain Wadsworth, a Hartford man, had secretly carried it off. He hid it, so it is said, in a hollow oak, which after that was always called the Charter Oak. The spot where the tree stood is now marked by a marble tablet.

111. What happened to Governor Andros. — Governor Andros made Boston his home, and the people there hated



HIDING THE CHARTER

him with all their hearts, because he was a hard man to get on with. One day a ship came in, bringing the news that England had another king — one who would not be friendly to the governor. Then the people of Boston rose with a shout, seized Andros, and locked him up so that he might not do any more mischief.

¹ Parchment is made of sheepskin and is much tougher than paper. The charters were written on it, because they would be less easily destroyed.

After a while he was sent back to England; he never came back to Boston again.

112. The English laws about American trade. — Generally speaking, the American colonists enjoyed a great deal of liberty, yet in many ways they could not do as they liked. This was the case with some things they wanted to send abroad to sell, or to make to use for themselves at home.

For instance, the planters at the South wanted very much to send a good deal of their tobacco to Europe to sell, but they were forbidden to do it. The king's laws said that the planters must send their tobacco to England and sell it there and nowhere else.¹

Next, the people of Pennsylvania had immense mines of iron, but the king's laws would not permit them to make the iron into anything they could use. If a farmer needed an ax to cut his wood with, or some nails to mend a barn door with, or if his wife wanted a pot to boil potatoes in, the ax, the nails, and the pot had to be bought in England and brought across the sea.

Again, the American colonists had a great many sheep, but they were forbidden to make any fine cloth from the wool. If a man in New York wanted a nice black coat to wear on Sundays, or if his wife wanted a handsome dress, they had to purchase cloth which came from England.

This was one side of a picture that the colonists did not like to look at. But there was another side to that picture which they always looked at very gladly. Let us now take a look at the pleasant side.

¹ This was by the English Navigation Laws.

In the first place, the king's laws ordered the people of England to buy all their tobacco from the Virginia and Maryland planters. If they asked permission to buy some from Spain or France, they got No for an answer.

In the next place, the English makers could sell their axes, pots, and nails, and their fine woollen cloth at a low price. The colonists at that time could not have made and sold them so cheap, if they had tried their best.

Last of all, the king bought timber, tar, pitch, and turpentine here to build English ships. He not only paid the full price which the colonists asked, but he paid somewhat more.¹ He did that in order to encourage the people here to produce all they could of such things.

Perhaps, then, if we look at both sides of the picture we shall think that, on the whole, the people in America were not very badly treated — at least, not up to this time.

Benjamin Franklin was a true American, and he was a good judge of such things. He said that the colonists were so contented then that the king of England could lead them "by a thread."

Now, if you have a young, high-spirited horse that you can lead by a thread, you know it must be because he is willing to follow you

113. Review. — The king's charters, or written promises, gave the American colonists the same rights here that Englishmen had in England.

In Virginia, and in all other colonies, the people took part in making the laws passed here, by which they were governed.

¹ That is, he paid a bounty to the producers.

After a time the king took away most of the charters he had given, but the people still kept the right to take part in making the American laws.

But the colonists could not buy and sell where they liked. They could not sell their tobacco where they pleased, for if they sent it abroad they had to sell it in England. They had to buy all their ironware and their fine woolen cloth in England.

But on the other hand the English people had to buy all their tobacco of the colonists. Then again, the English manufacturers sold their goods to the people here cheaper than they could then have made such goods themselves. Last of all, the king paid the colonists a very high price for a number of things which he bought here to use in building English ships.

Benjamin Franklin, who was a true American, said that up to this time the colonists generally were contented and happy.

X

THE AMERICAN COLONISTS QUARREL WITH THE KING ; THE WAR OF THE REVOLUTION

114. George the Third becomes King of England; the colonists quarrel with him. — After George the Third became king of England (1760) the American colonists began to resist being led (§ 112). Benjamin Franklin said that they changed entirely in their feeling toward the king. They were no longer contented. They now felt as a horse does when you hitch him to a load which is heavier than he can pull.

The reason for this great change of feeling was this : George the Third ordered the colonists to give him money which they felt he had no right to demand from them.

The king had resolved to send ten thousand British soldiers over to America to prevent the Canadian French from beginning a new war (§ 101).

To get money to pay these soldiers he made up his mind to tax the colonists, and to tax them, too, against their will.

Now, in England, it had long been clearly understood that the king could not do anything of this kind. There it was settled, once for all, that he could not take so much as a single penny from the people unless they gave their consent to it.

The Americans said, When we came here to settle we received charters (§ 109) which promised us that we should always have the same rights that Englishmen have in England. Now, they do not have to pay taxes unless they vote to pay them; neither will we.

George the Third was a man who meant to do what was fair and right. But he was a very obstinate man, and he sometimes made bad mistakes. He did so in this case, for he replied, I must have this tax, and if you refuse to give me the money I shall take it by force.

That was the way the great quarrel between the people of America and the king began.

115. The tax called the Stamp Act (1765). — Soon after this dispute the king got the English Parliament¹ in London to pass a law called the Stamp Act.

That law commanded the American colonists to buy English stamps — something like the postage stamps² we have now — and to use these for many things.

If, for instance, a man wanted to purchase a piece of land for a farm or to build a house on, he had to pay for a stamp on the deed or paper which made the land his.

It was the same with many other things both great and small. The intention was to make everybody purchase

¹ Parliament is a body of men who represent the people of England, Scotland, and Ireland. They meet in London, in the Houses of Parliament, and make laws, just as Congress meets in Washington and makes laws for the government of the United States. Before the American Revolution, or War of Independence, the English Parliament claimed the right of making laws for governing the American colonies.

² Some of these stamps could be fastened on the paper while others were impressed or printed on it, just as our postage stamps are sometimes printed or impressed on envelopes.

some of these stamps. Even if any one bought only a newspaper or an almanac he had to pay something additional for the stamp on it. He might not have to spend more than a cent for the stamp, or he might have to spend fifty dollars for it — it all depended on the value of what he bought.

From the very first, the American colonists positively refused to buy any of these stamps. When they were sent over from England, the people seized them and tore them up or made bonfires of them in the streets.

But they did not stop there, for they said, We will not pay this tax or any other tax unless we can help make the tax laws. The king denied them that right, so the quarrel went on. At length the king found that it was useless to send any more stamps to America, and then the Stamp Act was given up (1766).

116. The king tries a new tax; what the people did about it. — But the next year (1767) George the Third decided to try a different plan for getting money from the colonists against their will.

The people of this country then bought all their window glass, their paint, their wall paper, and their tea from merchants in England.

The Parliament, or Congress (§ 115), in London, now made a law which ordered the American colonists to pay a tax on these things when they bought them at the shops here. The king signed the law, just as he had signed the Stamp Act.



BRITISH STAMP

But the Americans said, Rather than pay this new tax we will do without glass, paper, paint, or tea. Samuel Adams of Boston went further still. He said, Let us all agree to eat nothing, drink nothing, and wear nothing which England sends here to sell, so long as the king demands this money from us. Thousands of people throughout the country took that pledge and kept it.

117. What happened to some shiploads of tea (1773).— Finally George the Third thought it would be best to drop all of the new taxes except that on tea. He said that must stand. It was a very small tax, only six cents on a pound, and the king believed that the Americans would pay that rather than have any more dispute.

That was where he made a great mistake, for the colonists would no more drink that taxed tea than they would drink so much poison.

One morning (1773) an English ship loaded with the stuff sailed into Boston harbor; and two other vessels, loaded in the same way, came in a little later.

The people refused to let the captains land any of the tea. A number of days afterward a party of men disguised themselves as Indians and went down to the ships at night. They took out all the chests of tea, broke them open, and emptied their contents into the harbor.

In the other colonies the people felt as they did in Massachusetts. In New York, in Pennsylvania, in Maryland, and in South Carolina they either forced the tea ships to go back or in some way they destroyed the tea.

118. The king punishes Boston (1774).— When George the Third heard what the people of Boston had done he resolved to punish the rebellious town. He ordered

General Gage, the English commander in Boston, to close the port. After that was done no vessels could go out or come in. This, of course, put a stop to a great deal of trade, and it threw many persons out of work. In a short time the poor began to suffer.

But the people would not beg the king's pardon; and they refused to pay a cent for the tea which they had dumped into the harbor.

The people of the other colonies, both north and south, sent provisions by land to Boston, to keep the citizens from starving. That showed very clearly that the Americans everywhere were of one mind, and that they were determined to stand by each other.

119. The great meeting at Philadelphia, 1774; the fight at Lexington and Concord, 1775. — The people of the colonies now chose a number of their wisest and best men and sent them to hold a great meeting at Philadelphia, 1774. This meeting was called the Continental Congress.

That Congress tried in every way to come to a peaceable settlement with the king. They certainly did not want to go to war if they could possibly help it. But at any rate they were determined not to pay taxes against their will.

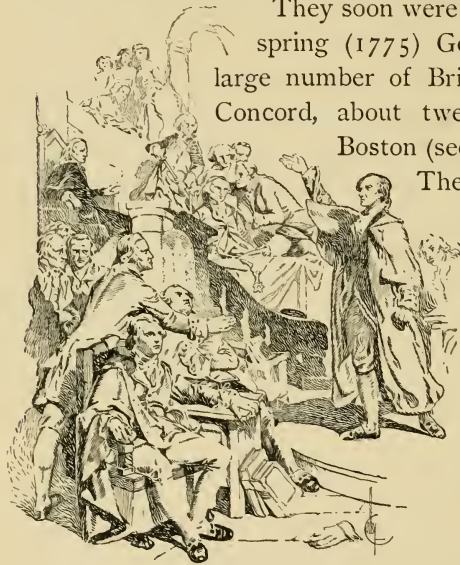
But there was one man in Virginia — that was Patrick Henry — who felt certain that they would never be able to get the king to change his mind. He declared boldly what must be done. He put it all in three short words, — “We must *fight!*”

Before long a good many others began to think the same thing. Then the farmers in Massachusetts and in

the other colonies took down the old guns which they had used to shoot wolves and Indians, and set to work to scour them up.

Soon they began to form companies of "minutemen," so that they might be ready to shoulder their guns at a minute's notice in case they should be wanted.

They soon were wanted, for the next spring (1775) General Gage sent a large number of British soldiers out to Concord, about twenty miles west of Boston (see map on page 124).



“‘WE MUST fight!’”

The soldiers had orders to seize some powder and provisions which the “minutemen” had stored there.

The British left Boston in the night so as not to be seen, and they went on the road which passes through Lexington.

Paul Revere¹ of Boston found out which way the British were going. He mounted a fast horse, got to Lexington before them, and gave the alarm.

When the British reached Lexington early in the morning of April 19, 1775, there stood a company of “minutemen” ready to meet them. Both sides fired.

¹ Revere (re-veer’); see § 71.



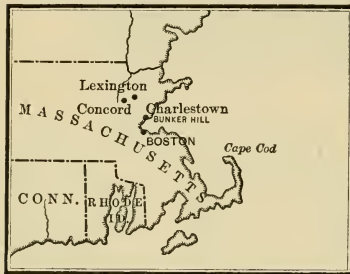
THE NORTHERN STATES IN THE REVOLUTION

The British killed seven of the Americans and then started for Concord.

At Concord Bridge there was a much harder fight. Several were killed on each side. The soldiers then turned about to go back to Boston. But the farmers in their shirt sleeves stood waiting for them behind trees and stone walls. As the British passed, the "minutemen" shot them down like sheep.

It was a terrible slaughter, for the Americans followed the soldiers for miles.

This was the beginning of that great war called the American Revolution.¹ It went on for eight years. It ended, as we shall see,



SCALE OF MILES
0 50 100

by making the colonists a free and independent people.

120. Cooping the British up in Boston; the battle of Bunker Hill, 1775. — After the British soldiers had returned to Boston (§ 119), the "minutemen" from all parts of the country began to gather. They formed a ring of armed men around the town (see map on page 126). The other colonies sent men to join them. In this way the American or Continental army was formed. It was sixteen thousand strong. General Gage had not

¹ Revolution: this word means a revolving or turning over. Here it means the overthrow of the English government by the American colonists, and the setting up by them of a new and independent form of government. When they began to fight, the colonists did not intend to overthrow the king's power in this country; but they soon saw that they must overthrow it and establish a free government of their own.

then nearly as many British soldiers, so he found himself shut up in Boston. But he was now to have a new surprise. When the sun rose on the 17th of June, 1775, General Gage looked up and saw to his astonishment that the Yankees were building a fort on Bunker Hill in Charlestown (see map on page 126).

Bunker Hill overlooks Boston. It was plain that if the Yankees stayed there they would fire down on the British and make it hot for them.

Looking through his spyglass at the fort, General Gage saw a tall, fine-looking man standing on the wall of earth which had just been made. "Who is that man?" he asked. "That is Colonel William Prescott," was the answer. "Will he fight?" asked the general. "Yes, to the last drop of his blood."

When General Gage heard that he ordered a part of the British army to drive Prescott from the hill.

As soon as the Americans saw them coming they made ready to fight. Then the word was passed along among them: "Don't fire until you see the whites of their eyes." The men in the fort waited until the redcoats got almost to them, then they fired, and the British fell in rows.

With that, Gage's men turned about and rushed down the hill. But they soon came back. Again the Yankees drove them down the hill. But the British were like bulldogs, and they speedily started up the hill for a third time.

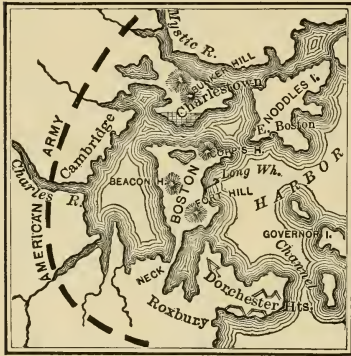
The Americans had now scarcely any powder left. They could not hold out any longer; they had to leave the fort. They gave up not because they were beaten, but because they no longer had anything to fight with.

General Gage had at last won the battle. But he did not want to fight another one like it, for he had lost too many of his soldiers. More than a thousand of his men lay dead or wounded in the tall grass on the sides of Bunker Hill.¹

121. Washington is made Commander in Chief of the Continental Army (1775). — Meanwhile the Congress at Philadelphia (§ 119) had appointed George Washington

(§§ 102, 103) commander in chief of the Continental army (§ 120), which was gathered around Boston.

On his way from Virginia to Cambridge, near Boston, Washington asked, "How did our men behave at the battle of Bunker Hill?" "They behaved bravely," was the reply. "Then,"



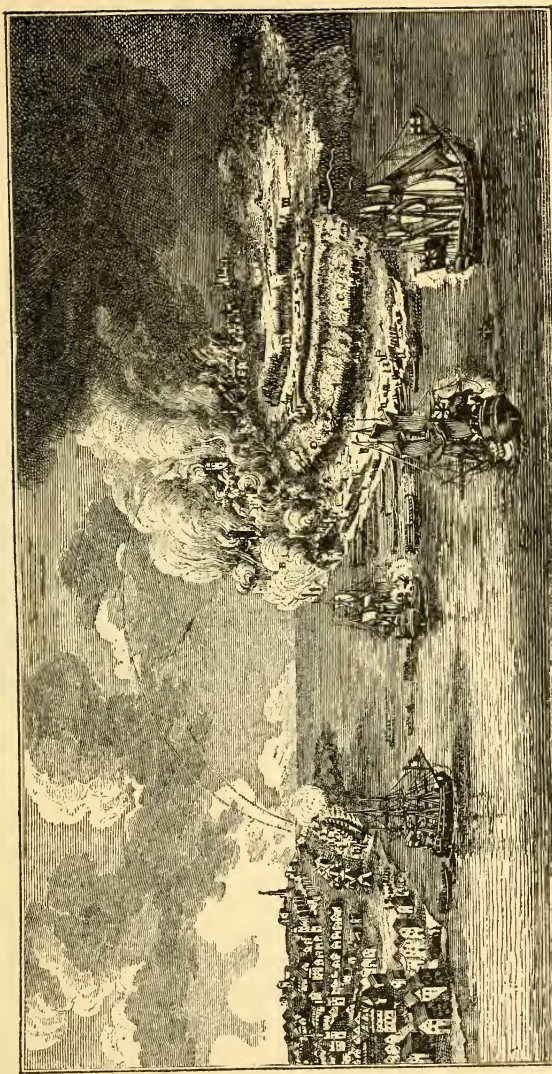
said he, "the liberties of the country are safe."

On his arrival at his headquarters at Cambridge, Washington took command of the American army (July 3, 1775), under the great elm which is still standing.

122. Washington drives the British out of Boston (1776). — For a long time General Washington could do nothing because he had so few cannon and so little powder. But Ethan Allen, a Green Mountain boy (§ 59), had managed to capture the British fort at Ticonderoga² on Lake Champlain. By that victory Allen got a great number

¹ The Americans lost less than half as many men, because they had the advantage of fighting behind earthworks.

² Ticonderoga (tī-kŏn'dĕr-ŏ'gĕ).



View of the Attack on Bunker's Hill, with the burning of Charles Town, June 17, 1775.
A Boston Battery | B Charles Town | C British Troops attacking | D Provincial Lines

of cannon and a quantity of powder. When snow fell, Washington sent to Ticonderoga and had the big guns and the powder hauled on ox sleds to the camp at Cambridge. Then he felt that he should soon be ready for active business.



ARNOLD'S EXPEDITION

In the meantime the Americans had sent two small armies into Canada to take Quebec (§ 93). Benedict Arnold led part of the men through the woods of Maine. They came so near dying of starvation before they got to Canada that they were glad to dig roots out of the half-frozen mud and eat them to keep alive. But Arnold was a man that nothing but death could stop, and he pushed onward until he reached Quebec.

The Americans fought desperately and came near taking the city; but at last they had to give up the attempt.

Then it came Washington's turn to see what he could do with his new cannon. Early in the spring (1776) he managed to drag some of them to the top of a hill called Dorchester Heights,¹ which overlooked the British fleet in Boston harbor. When everything was ready Washington sent word to General Howe, the English commander. He told him that if he did not leave the town he would knock the place to pieces about his ears, and knock his vessels to pieces at the same time.

General Howe took a long, hard look at Washington's cannon. They were black, ugly, and grim. Howe did

¹ It is now part of South Boston.

not like their appearance at all, and so he decided that he would say good-by to Boston. He and his army got on board their war ships (March 17, 1776) and sailed for Halifax, Nova Scotia. Later on, they left Halifax and sailed to New York to open the war there.

123. The Americans declare themselves independent, July 4, 1776.—A few months after Washington had



THE BRITISH LEAVING BOSTON

entered Boston great news came from Philadelphia. On July 4, 1776, the Continental Congress (§ 119) declared that the thirteen American colonies no longer belonged to Great Britain. They are now, said they, free and independent states.

When the war with the king began (§ 119), the people did not intend to separate from England. They were then fighting simply to get their rights as Englishmen.

But now everything had changed. In future they would fight to establish the independence of the United

States of America. They had at last cut clear from George the Third and from Great Britain forever.

124. The Patriots and the Tories in the Revolution. — It very seldom happens that all of the people in any country agree entirely about anything — not even about a war for liberty. So the Americans in the Revolution took opposite sides.

The greater part of the colonists had fully resolved to fight against the king. They believed that he was wrong, and they said to him, We shall never lay down our guns until you agree to let America alone. These people called themselves “patriots,”¹ and Washington was their leader.

If you would like to know what sort of stuff a real patriot was made of in those days, look at young Captain Nathan Hale of Connecticut. He went to General Washington and offered to disguise himself and go into the British camp at New York to get information which would be of use to our army.

Captain Hale knew perfectly well that if the enemy found out who he was and what he was doing they would put him to death as a spy. But he did not hesitate a moment. He went on his dangerous errand because he believed that he was doing his duty. He was discovered by the British. They ordered him to be hanged before sunrise the next day.

As the young man stood on the scaffold he said, “I only regret that I have but one life to lose for my country.” These words show how an American patriot felt, and what an American patriot would do.

¹ Patriots (pā'trī-ōts).

But there were other Americans who thought that we had no right to fight against the king. Many of them were good men and true men, who wanted to do what was right as much as the patriots did. Governor Hutchinson of Massachusetts was one of them. They called themselves Loyalists,¹ but the people generally gave them the nickname of Tories.

The Tories believed that it would be better for the colonists not to separate from England. They thought that they should get justice done them in the end, and that then they would have nothing to complain of.

On the other hand, a part of the Tories were selfish men. They cared nothing for their country, but they believed the king would pay them well if they stood up on his side. Some indeed even joined the British and fought against the people of their own state.

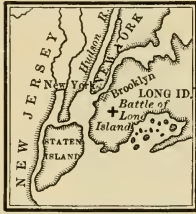
Before the great war was over, all of the Tories, good and bad alike, left America. Some went because they did not care to stay here any longer, but



CAPTAIN NATHAN HALE

¹ The Loyalists were those who claimed to be loyal or true to the king. The nickname Tory meant a man who cared more to please the king than he cared for his country or for liberty.

many of them were forced to go, and were never permitted to come back. They often gave up beautiful homes, the society of old friends, and, in fact, everything that was dear to them for the sake of doing what they thought was their duty.



When General Howe sailed from Boston (§ 122) he took more than a thousand Tories and their families with him to Halifax. Thousands more went out of the country afterward. They said farewell to America forever.

125. The war in New York; Washington crosses the Delaware; battle of Trenton. — General Howe soon left Halifax (§ 122) for New York. General Washington moved his army from Boston to meet him and fight him.

A battle took place on Long Island (1776) in which the Americans were beaten (see map above). The truth was that Washington did not have men enough. He was forced to leave New York. He hurried southward with his little army. The British general, Lord Cornwallis, tried his best to catch up with him; but Washington managed to keep out of the way of the British. He crossed the state of New Jersey and finally got over the Delaware River, at Trenton, into the state of Pennsylvania. As Cornwallis had no boats he could not follow him (see map on page 133).

On Christmas night (1776) Washington suddenly turned about with his men and crossed the river back to Trenton. He made the passage in the darkness and in the midst of a blinding snowstorm. The part of the British army which was at Trenton were not looking for an attack by

the Americans. Washington completely surprised them. He captured about a thousand prisoners, and got a lot of guns and ammunition besides. That was a Christmas which both sides never forgot.

126. What Robert Morris did; battle of Princeton; Lafayette; the Germans. — But Washington's men were in sore need of money. Many of them had left wives and children at home who did not know where they were to get bread to eat.

At that time there was very little silver money in the country. There was plenty of paper money, or what was called money, but nobody wanted to take it because it was worth so little. Washington said that a whole wagonload of it would hardly buy a wagonload of potatoes.

Robert Morris, a banker in Philadelphia, took pity on the Revolutionary soldiers. He knew the kind of money they wanted. He went out early on New Year's morning (1777) and managed to borrow fifty thousand dollars, all in silver. He sent it at once to Washington to pay his men.

Then Washington marched rapidly to Princeton, New Jersey, and defeated the British there (see map above).



The next summer (1777) Lafayette,¹ a young French nobleman, a boy of nineteen, came over to America. He went to General Washington's camp and offered to help us fight for our independence. Several German military officers came here for the same purpose. They showed us

how to drill our men and so make better soldiers of them.

127. The British take Philadelphia; Burgoyne's defeat in 1777. — The next autumn General Howe (§§ 122, 125), at the head of a powerful British army, took Philadelphia in spite of all that Washington could do to stop him. That city was then the capital of the United States. It was a hard thing for us to lose it.



ON GUARD AT VALLEY FORGE

Washington with his little army then retreated to the hills at Valley Forge. There, during the winter, our men suffered terribly from hunger and cold (see map on page 133).

But while General Howe and his men were making themselves comfortable and having a jolly time in the Quaker City, the British in eastern New York met with a terrible defeat.

¹ Lafayette (lä'fä'yét').

General Burgoyne¹ had started with an army to come down from Canada to the Hudson River (see map below). He had to make his way through the woods. He ran short of provisions, and sent a thousand of his soldiers to help themselves to the Yankee supplies stored up at Bennington, Vermont. But Colonel John Stark, with a lot of Green Mountain and New Hampshire "boys," killed or captured nearly the whole thousand. After that, Burgoyne found it very hard work to get as far south as Saratoga.

He never got a mile farther. The Americans fell upon him and fought two great battles. In the last one, October 7, 1777, Benedict Arnold (§ 122) and his men drove the British in all directions. Burgoyne, and his entire army, were taken prisoners.



128. "Yankee Doodle"; the new American flag; what effect the capture of Burgoyne had.—When our drummers and fifers entered the British camp after the great battle, they played "Yankee Doodle" as they had never played it before. Our color bearers followed, proudly carrying the new American flag—the stars and stripes²—which had led us on to victory.

¹ Burgoyne (bûr-goin'); he lost nearly six thousand men.

² Washington raised the first flag of the thirteen United British American colonies at the camp of the Continental army in Cambridge (§ 121), on New Year's Day, 1776. That flag was made by taking the British flag,

But in the excitement of that hour the Americans did not forget that Burgoyne's men were nearly ready to drop from hunger, so the first thing they did was to give their British prisoners all they could eat.

The king of France hated the English because they had taken Canada away from him (§ 107). When he heard that Burgoyne and his whole army had been captured by us, he rejoiced with all his heart. Now, said he, I will send war ships, soldiers, and money to help the Americans finish up the war against George the Third.

which then consisted of two crosses, and adding to those crosses thirteen alternate red and white stripes, or one for each British American colony.

After the thirteen colonies had declared themselves independent of Great Britain (July 4, 1776), Congress ordered (June 14, 1777) that a new flag should be made, which should represent the *United States of America*.

That flag, which may have been designed by Washington, consisted of thirteen stars and as many red and white stripes to represent the thirteen independent states which then formed the Union. The flag was sewn together at an upholstery shop kept by Betsy Ross on Arch Street, Philadelphia. The house where it was made is still standing.

This new flag, the stars and stripes, was first raised over a fort at Fort Stanwix (Rome), New York, on August 3, 1777. It was made of an old blue army overcoat, a red flannel petticoat, and some white cloth.

The stars and stripes were first carried in the great and decisive battle of Saratoga, New York, October 7, 1777, when Burgoyne surrendered to the American army (§ 127).

This flag was first raised in the northwestern part of the United States by Captain George Rogers Clark (§ 129), when he drove the British out of Indiana and Illinois in 1778.

Captain Paul Jones (§ 129) first displayed the new flag from the mast of an American war ship at sea in 1778.

Captain Robert Gray of Rhode Island (§ 152) first carried the new flag around the globe in 1793. The flag now keeps the original number of stripes in remembrance of the original thirteen colonies, with as many stars as there are states in the Union.



ORIGIN AND DEVELOPMENT OF THE AMERICAN FLAG

On the other hand, the king of England was so frightened by the surrender of so many of his men that he was ready to make peace. He offered to give us everything we asked for, except *independence*.

But independence was the one thing we were determined to have, no matter what it cost; so the great war for American liberty had to go on.

129. The British leave Philadelphia; what George Rogers Clark and Captain Paul Jones did.—All winter long (1777–1778) Washington's men had been half freezing and half starving at Valley Forge (§ 127), but in the spring everything changed. The British left Philadelphia (§ 127) and started for New York. They went because they were afraid the French king would send a fleet of war ships against them (§ 128).

Washington followed sharply after that part of the British army which went north across New Jersey. He beat them at the battle of Monmouth (1778) (see map on page 123). This was the last battle which was fought in the northern states in the open field.

But the British still held New York City. They held, too, the northwestern wilderness between the Alleghany Mountains and the Mississippi River.

Captain George Rogers Clark¹ determined to drive them out of that part of the country. He set out with a band of men as brave as himself and went westward. Going across the prairies of Indiana and Illinois (see map on page 139), he cleared that territory of the enemy (1778). Wherever he went he raised the stars and stripes, and raised them to stay.

¹ See the Life of George Rogers Clark in Montgomery's "Beginner's American History" in this series.

In this way Captain Clark did a piece of work of which any man might well be proud. He made a large part of the northwestern country the property of the United States.

That same year (1778) Captain Paul Jones hoisted the American flag on an American war ship. It was the first time the stars and stripes had been seen on the ocean. He crossed the Atlantic. Then he attacked two British vessels of war near the English coast and captured both of them.

Up to that time England had always boasted that she ruled the sea. But Paul Jones showed King George the Third that in future the Americans meant to rule part of it themselves.



Map showing the forts at Detroit, Kaskaskia, and Vincennes, with Clark's line of march

130. Review. — As we are now about half through the Revolutionary War, it will be best to stop for a little and see just how much has been done.

When George the Third became king of England he resolved to make the American colonists pay taxes against their will. He tried to force them to buy stamps, but they destroyed them; then he endeavored to make them buy taxed tea, and they destroyed that in the same way. In order to punish the colonists, the king closed the port of Boston. Later, when the British went out to seize some powder and provisions which belonged to the Americans, fighting took place at Lexington and Concord.

After the battle of Bunker Hill, Congress appointed Washington commander in chief of the Continental army. He drove the British out of Boston.

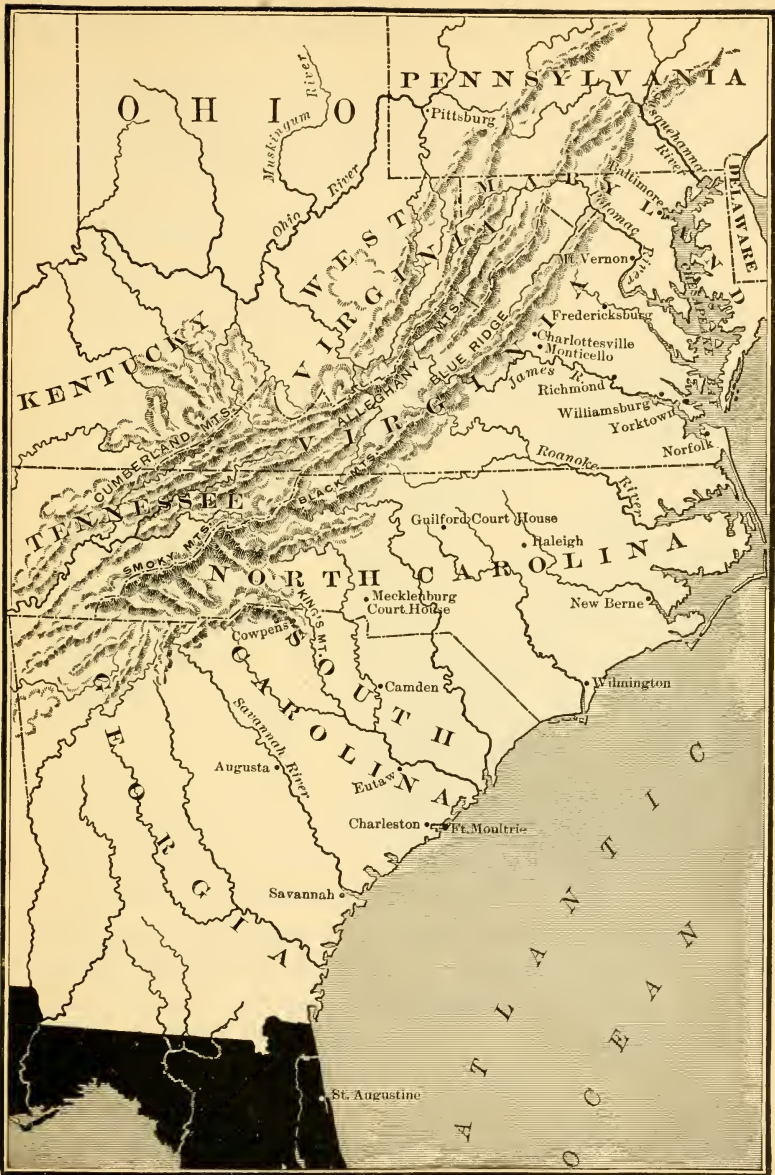
On July 4, 1776, the thirteen American colonies declared themselves free and independent states.

After the battle of Long Island, Washington was forced to retreat across New Jersey and the Delaware River into



Pennsylvania. But he soon turned back, captured a large number of prisoners at Trenton, and beat the enemy at Princeton. But the British had a very much larger army than Washington, and they took possession of Philadelphia, then the capital of the United States.

On the other hand, the Americans fought a decisive battle at Saratoga, New York, and took General Burgoyne



THE SOUTHERN STATES IN THE REVOLUTION

and his entire army prisoners. That was the first great victory won under the new American flag of the stars and stripes. The king of France now promised to help us carry on the war.

The British army did not dare to stay in Philadelphia, so they went back to New York City. George Rogers Clark attacked the British in the northwestern country and drove them out of the greater part of it. Captain Paul Jones first raised the stars and stripes on an American war ship and gained a splendid victory over the British on the ocean.

After the surrender of Burgoyne, England offered the people of the United States everything they asked except independence. But the Americans replied, Independence is the one thing we must have. So the war went on.

131. Lord Cornwallis sets out to conquer the South (1780). — The British now thought they would see if they could not win some victories in the South. If they could, it would help to make up for their bad defeat at Saratoga (§ 127).

They accordingly sent a fleet of war ships and an army to Charleston, South Carolina. They took possession of that town. Lord Cornwallis (§ 125) then set out to conquer the states of South Carolina and North Carolina.

He won a battle at Camden, South Carolina (see map on page 140); but in a fight at Kings Mountain, in the same state, he lost some of his best men.

Then, again, Marion¹ and Sumter, two South Carolina patriots, worried Cornwallis day and night. Marion would steal upon him like a swamp fox, when nobody expected

¹ Marion; see § 71.

him. He would kill off a number of British soldiers and slip away before any one could catch him. In a few days he would creep slyly back, and kill a few more. In this way the British general's army was always becoming smaller.

132. Benedict Arnold betrays his country (1780). — While this strange kind of war was going on at the South a terrible thing happened in the state of New York. General Benedict Arnold, one of the bravest men in the American army, now tried to bring his country to ruin.

Arnold had done wonders at Quebec (§ 122) and he had done more than any other man to win the victory over Burgoyne at the great battle of Saratoga (§ 127). He had been so badly wounded in that battle that he was



MARION AND SUMTER

no longer able to fight. To reward his services, Washington gave him the command of the fort at West Point on the Hudson River (see map on page 123).

Instead of doing everything he could to strengthen the fort so that the British could not hope to take it, Arnold turned traitor, and secretly offered to give up the fort to the enemy.

He employed an English spy, named André,¹ to carry letters to the British general in New York City. André was stopped by some of our men. They searched him and found the secret papers hid away in one of his stockings. He was then tried as a spy. He was found guilty and was hanged.

Meanwhile Washington had visited the fort at West Point. There he discovered that General Arnold had taken a boat and had escaped to a British war ship which was on the river, not far away.

Arnold was never caught. The British paid him a large sum of money for what he had tried to do, and they put him in command of some English soldiers. He then turned and fought against his own country. He fought against Washington who had always been his friend. He did even worse than that, for he attacked and tried to destroy the very state where he was born.²

Once he captured an American patriot and held him as a prisoner of war. Arnold, it is said, asked his prisoner, "What would my countrymen do with me if they should ever manage to get hold of me?"

The American replied, "General Arnold, I will tell you plainly just what they would do. They would cut off your leg which was wounded at Quebec and at Saratoga, and they would bury it with the honors of war.³ But when they had done that they would then build a gallows and hang all the rest of you on it."

¹ André (ăn'dră).

² Connecticut.

³ When soldiers bury one of their comrades with the honors of war the band plays at the grave and the men fire their guns over it.

After the War of Independence was over, Arnold went to London to live. He was the only American in that great city that no other American who went there would look at or speak to, for Benedict Arnold was the only man born in the United States who had fought in the Revolution and who had turned traitor to his own country.

133. How General Greene got the better of Lord Cornwallis (1781).—A few months after Arnold's treason was discovered (§ 132), General Greene of Rhode Island took command of the little American army in the South. Next to Washington he was the best general we had.

Lord Cornwallis (§ 131) thought that he could soon capture General Greene, but the Yankee soldier was sharper than he was. He played the same game with the British general that a partridge will sometimes play with a boy who is trying to catch him. The partridge will pretend that his wing is broken and that he cannot fly, and so he will keep the boy following him until he suddenly rises, spreads his wings, and is off like a shot. So General Greene led Cornwallis up and down and backward and forward across North and South Carolina, until he completely tired him out (see map on page 140).

At last the British general made up his mind that he had better go north into Virginia. That was just what Greene wanted him to do. As soon as Cornwallis had got well started, the Yankee general, who had been coaxing him along, turned about. He then went down into South Carolina and drove what British there were left there into Charleston. There they stayed and did not dare to come out.

134. Lord Cornwallis gets into a trap; the great victory, 1781; end of the War for American Independence. — Cornwallis got into Virginia (§ 133) and set about chasing Lafayette (§ 126), but the young Frenchman managed to keep out of his way. Finally the British general decided to go to Yorktown (see map below), and wait there until he got help from the British in New York.

At that time Washington had his army on the banks



of the Hudson, not far from New York City. He saw that now was his chance to capture Cornwallis and his army. He made all his preparations so quietly that no one suspected what he meant to do. Then when he had got everything ready, he hurried south with his men, and with some French soldiers besides. In addition, a French fleet of war ships sailed south to help him.

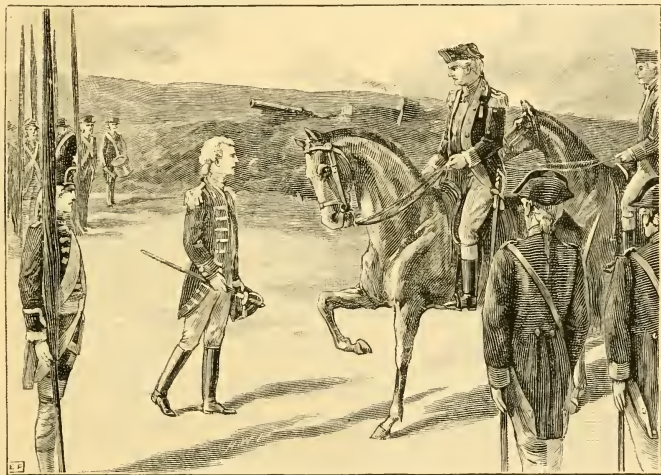
Before Cornwallis knew just what had happened he found himself caught in Yorktown like a fox in a trap. He looked out on one side of the town and saw the cannon of the French fleet pointed straight at him. He looked out on the other side and saw Washington with his army getting ready to fire on him.

He vowed that he would never give up. But he could not stand the red-hot shot and the cannon balls which poured into the town on all sides. At the end of a week he hoisted

a white flag on a high pole. What did that mean? It meant that Lord Cornwallis and all his army had surrendered.¹

It was just four years to a day since the Yankees had captured Burgoyne and his army at Saratoga (§ 127).

The British soldiers marched out of Yorktown October 19, 1781, and gave up their guns to Washington. The great War of the Revolution had come to an end.



THE SURRENDER OF THE BRITISH AT YORKTOWN

King George the Third saw that it would be of no use to fight the Americans any longer. He said, Let us make peace. In 1783 the treaty, or agreement of peace, was signed, and the United States of America became a free and independent nation.

¹ Lord Cornwallis was confined to his bed by illness, and he sent General O'Hara to make the surrender for him. General Washington appointed General Lincoln to receive Cornwallis's sword.

135. Review of the whole Revolutionary War. — King George the Third taxed the American colonists against their will. Rather than pay the tax they resolved to fight. The year after the war began they declared themselves independent.

The first great victory won by the Americans was when they captured General Burgoyne and his whole army at Saratoga, New York, in 1777. The king of France then sent over men, ships, and money to help them keep up the fight.

Four years later, Washington, with the help of the French, defeated Lord Cornwallis at Yorktown, Virginia, 1781. The surrender of that general with his army compelled the king of England to make peace. The people of the United States of America had now gained their independence.

XI

THE PEOPLE OF THE UNITED STATES MAKE A NEW FORM OF GOVERNMENT—THE CONSTITUTION (1788)

136. **Trouble at home.** — But though the war was now over, the people of the United States were not contented. The citizens of the different states quarreled with each other about many things. Those who lived in one part would not let those who lived in another send things to market unless they paid a tax on them. So there was no real freedom of trade between New England and the Middle States or between the Middle States and the South. This of course made a great deal of trouble.

Then, again, the people could not agree about the best way of carrying on the government. The government needed money, but the people would not give what was called for; oftentimes they would not give anything at all. There was no one then whose duty it was to see that the laws made by the government were enforced. The United States had a Congress which met and said what ought to be done, but it had no President to see that those things were done.

The people went on in this way for four years (1783–1787). All that time matters were steadily getting worse. The truth is that the country was like a barrel made of thirteen good solid staves, but with no hoops to hold them

together. Finally, Washington and other noted men said, We must hold a convention, or meeting, and talk these things over, for if we do not find out soon what ought to be done the United States will drop to pieces.

137. The people of the United States make a new form of government. — The people of the thirteen states chose more than fifty of their wisest and best men, and sent them to Philadelphia (1787) to see what should be done. Washington was one of them. Benjamin Franklin was another.

They spent nearly four months in trying to make improvements in the form of government which we then had. At last they agreed to throw everything aside and make an entirely new form of government. The new agreement, which they signed, was called the Constitution.

The Constitution made many changes, but there were only four to which we need give our attention here.

First. The Constitution ordered that the American republic should have a head or President. It would be his duty to see that in future the people obeyed the laws passed by Congress.

Secondly. The Constitution gave Congress power to raise whatever money the government really needed. For instance, if the government wanted ten millions of dollars to build new war ships, or to pay soldiers for fighting the Indians, or for widening the entrance to New York harbor, or for constructing lighthouses along the seacoast, then it could call on the people to give that sum, and it could make sure of getting what it called for.

Thirdly. The Constitution declared plainly that every American had the right to buy and sell goods freely, in any state in the Union or in all the states of the Union.

Fourthly. The Constitution declared that if the people of any state got into a dispute about what Congress or the President had the right to do, they must not try to settle it. They must let the Court of the United States settle it for them.

After the convention, or meeting, at Philadelphia had voted to accept the Constitution, it was sent to the people of the thirteen states. They, in their turn, voted to accept it, and, in that way, they set up a new and far better form of government than they had before (1788).

That was done more than a hundred years ago. We are living under that Constitution, or set of rules, to-day. We have made some additions or amendments to it, but the greater part of it stands unchanged. Men like Washington and Franklin believed that it was a good piece of work. Time has shown that they were right. The Constitution is so good that every American feels proud of it, and a number of other countries, France for one, have copied large parts of it for their government.

138. Review. — After the great War of the Revolution was over, the people of the United States did not feel satisfied with the rules, or form of government, which they had.

They sent a number of their best men to Philadelphia to see what ought to be done. They agreed to make a new Constitution, for the government of the country. Before that time we had a Congress which passed laws, but we had no President to see that those laws were obeyed.

The new Constitution, which the people accepted, gave us a President. We are living under that Constitution now, and we find it such a good one that we honor it as we honor our country's flag.

XII

GROWTH OF THE UNITED STATES UNDER THE CONSTITUTION (1789-1861)

GEORGE WASHINGTON, FIRST PRESIDENT (1789-1797)

139. Washington becomes the first President of the United States, 1789. — We had now got a new Constitution, or form of government (§ 137). The next thing to



ELECTION OF WASHINGTON

be done was to elect a President. Every one wanted General Washington to take that office, and so he was chosen the first President of the United States.

New York City was then the capital of the country. Washington was made President there in 1789. When the work was done, the bells of the city rang a merry peal, cannon thundered, and great crowds of people shouted for joy.

They felt certain that the country had chosen a man who would always do his duty. They knew that there



THE HALL AND STAIRCASE AT MOUNT VERNON

was no longer any danger that the thirteen states would suddenly drop to pieces like a barrel without a hoop (§ 136).

President Washington selected four men¹ to help him carry on his work. They were Thomas Jefferson, who wrote the Declaration of Independence (§ 123), Alexander

¹ They formed the Cabinet or private council of the President. They met with him from time to time to talk over what should be done. Every President since has had a Cabinet.

Hamilton, General Henry Knox, and Edmund Randolph.¹ Next, the President appointed John Jay of New York to be the chief judge, or chief justice, of the Court of the United States.²

140. The United States raises money to meet its expenses and pay its debts. — The first thing for the United States to do was to raise money to meet its expenses³ and to pay its debts. Congress passed a law called a *tariff*.⁴ The tariff declared that every pound of tea, or yard of silk, or gallon of wine which came into the country should be taxed a certain sum.

If, for instance, a merchant in New York or Philadelphia sent a vessel to China and got one hundred thousand pounds of tea he might have to pay the United States six cents a pound when he landed the tea here. In that case he handed over to the government six thousand dollars duty, or tax. We never had a tariff before, and so we never had been able to get money in this way. We now began to get a large sum every year.

Alexander Hamilton (§ 139) received all of this money and took care of it for the United States. He advised Congress to take part of it to pay our debts.

¹ Thomas Jefferson was Secretary of State; part of his duty was to see that everything went on smoothly between the United States and the nations of Europe; Alexander Hamilton was Secretary of the Treasury, and took care of the money belonging to the United States; General Knox was Secretary of War, and looked after the army of the United States; Edmund Randolph was Attorney-general, and advised on law matters.

² The Supreme Court of the United States; this is the highest court in the country.

³ Some of the necessary expenses of the government have already been mentioned; see § 137.

⁴ Tariff (tă'r'if).

We owed France gold which we had borrowed to buy guns and powder when we were fighting the Revolutionary War (§ 128). Next, we owed the different states money which we had borrowed to spend in the same way. Last of all, we owed the soldiers of the Revolution more than a million of dollars which they were begging Congress to pay them.

Congress finally voted to settle all of these debts. From that day to this the United States has never failed to pay every dollar it has borrowed. You and I can say with pride, Our country is honest, it has never cheated any one out of a cent that belonged to him. Whoever has lent money to it has not only got it back again, but has got interest with it.

141. Making a new kind of money ; counting the people of the United States. — Up to this time the United States had never used any gold or silver money except what had come from some country of Europe. Many of the coins were so old that they were worn perfectly smooth. Others had pieces cut out of them. Scarcely any of them were perfect, and for that reason it was often very difficult to tell what a piece of money was really worth. That, of course, made it hard to do business.

Thomas Jefferson said to Congress, We ought to stop using these foreign coins. We ought now to make some coins of our own. Congress agreed to this, and built a mint at Philadelphia. That mint sent out the first gold and silver money which had on it the name "United States of America."

From that time we began to make dollars, half dollars, quarters, dimes, and half dimes. These pieces were all

new and bright. Everybody liked to see them, everybody liked to handle them, everybody liked still more to get as many as he could of them. Later, the government began to make gold coins.

From Thomas Jefferson's day down to ours no one has ever said a word against the money made by the United States mints. It has always been found to be good at home and just as good abroad—that means that it is good everywhere.

Another question then came up, and a very interesting one it was. It was this: How many people are there in the United States? No one knew, for they had never been counted.

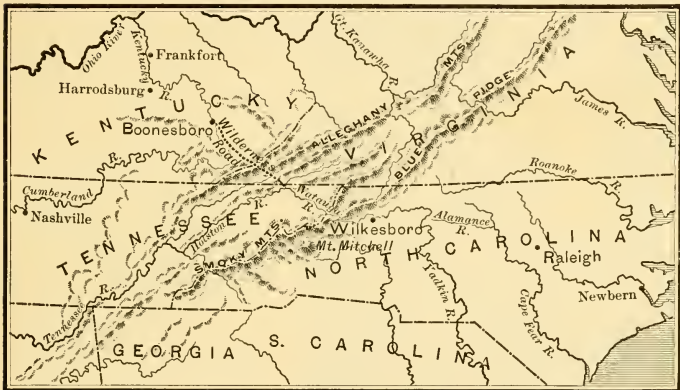
The first census, or count, was made in 1790. That showed that we had then nearly four millions of people. We have taken a census every ten years since that date. The last one, which was completed in 1900, showed that we had grown from four millions to nearly eighty millions. When Washington became our first President we were a very small nation, but now we have become one of the largest and strongest in the world. We have many more people than England, or France, or Germany.

142. We have trouble with France; emigrants go West; trouble with the Indians.— While Washington was President the people of France rose against their king. They cut off his head and they set up a republic something like ours.

Then war broke out between the French republic and England. The French sent over to get us to help them. But Washington knew that if we helped France we should certainly get into war with England. He thought that

we had done fighting enough for a while. On that account he declared that we ought not to take any part whatever in the quarrel between England and France. This naturally made the French people feel very angry toward us, and they made us a good deal of trouble.

By this time a good many people were beginning to leave their homes in the east and cross the Alleghany



MAP OF BOONE'S "WILDERNESS ROAD"

Mountains. They made settlements in the wild western country which lay between those mountains and the Mississippi River.

Daniel Boone,¹ a noted hunter, had already gone to the Kentucky Country and had built a fort there. Others had gone to the Tennessee Country and made settlements. Later, companies of emigrants went from New England to Pittsburg (§ 104), where they built boats and floated

¹ See the Life of Boone in Montgomery's "Beginner's American History" in this series.

down the Ohio River. They made a settlement which they called Marietta.¹ Not long afterward another company of emigrants went farther down the river (see map opposite) and built a little village of log huts (1788) which they named Cincinnati.²

The Indians in that part of the West tried to kill off these emigrants. They would hide in the woods and fire at their boats as they floated past, and they attacked them in their houses besides.



COTTON IN THE FIELD

President Washington sent General Wayne, a noted Revolutionary soldier, to see what he could do to stop this. The Indians were very much afraid of him. They said that he was as quick as a black snake—and that is the quickest of all snakes in that part of the country.

General Wayne beat the Indians in a great fight. He then made them give up a very large piece of the Ohio Country to the whites.

143. Young Eli Whitney invents a wonderful machine, 1793.—The planters at the South raised large quantities of tobacco and rice, but they wanted to raise cotton as

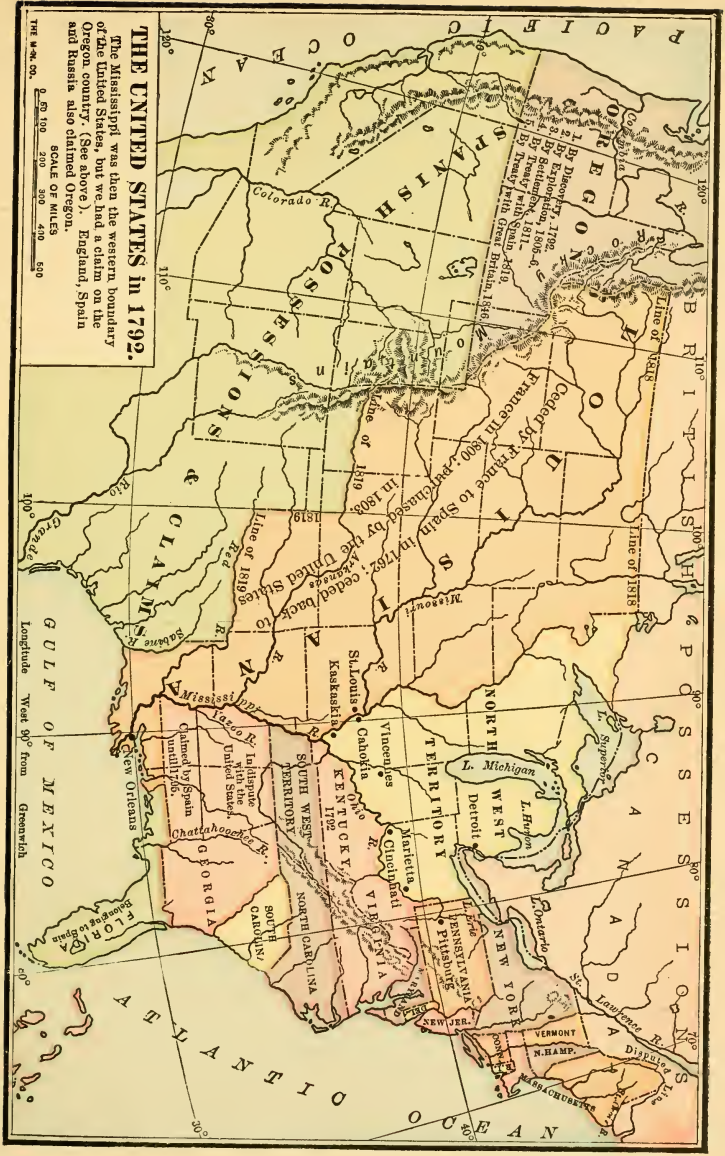
¹ Marietta (mā'rī-ēt'a).

² Cincinnati (sīn'sīn-nā'tī).

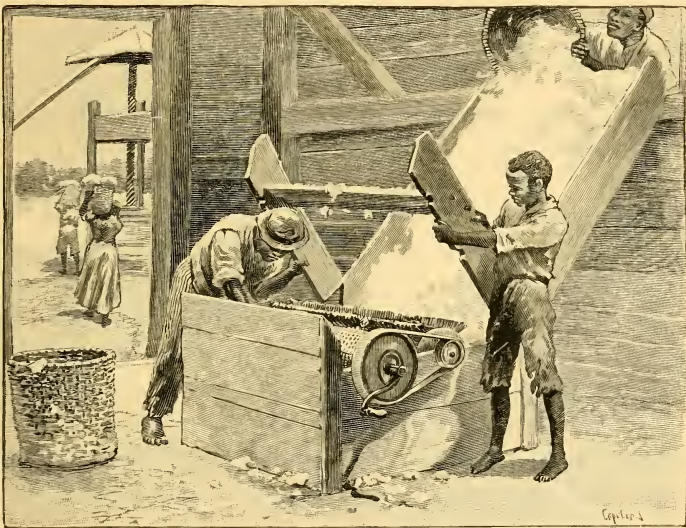
THE UNITED STATES in 1792.

The Mississippi was then the western boundary of the United States, but we had a claim on the Oregon country. (See above). England, Spain and Russia also claimed Oregon.

THE W. & A. CO. G. EN. 1890
 SCALE OF MILES
 200 300 400 500



well. There was a difficulty in the way of their doing that. The soft white down of cotton is covered with little green seeds which stick very tight. These seeds must all be stripped off before the cotton can be made into cloth. It used to take a negro a whole day to pick off the seeds from a single pound of cotton. For this



THE COTTON GIN

reason it did not pay the planters to raise cotton because cotton cloth then cost so much that only a few people could afford to buy it.

Eli Whitney,¹ a young Yankee schoolmaster, was then living in Georgia. He believed that he could invent a machine which would strip off the seeds. He made

¹ See the Life of Whitney in Montgomery's "Beginner's American History" in this series.

what he called a "cotton gin." It was entirely successful, and it would clean as much cotton in one day as a thousand slaves could do.

The planters were delighted. They said, Now, "cotton is king." We can sell all we can raise. So they began to cover thousands of acres with the plant. Mills were built in Massachusetts and other parts of New England for making cotton cloth. Besides this the South sent quantities of cotton to England and sold it. This of course was a good thing, for it brought a great deal of money into the country from abroad.

But Eli Whitney's invention did one thing which he probably had never thought about. It made more people at the South want to keep slaves. On the other hand, it made a great many people at the North want to see slavery spread and grow stronger. Those who owned cotton mills for making cloth saw how they would get rich through slave labor; so did those who owned ships and carried bales of cotton to England.

Washington, Jefferson, and Franklin had hoped that the time was soon coming when their countrymen would stop buying and selling black men. But now, as we have seen, all that was changed, and the chance that the negroes would get their freedom seemed farther off than ever.

144. John Jay makes a treaty, or agreement, with England. — Although we were at peace with England we still had some disputes with that country. England still held some forts at Detroit and at other places along our northern boundary line. We asked the king to give them up, but he replied that he meant to keep them until we paid certain debts which British merchants said we owed them.

Next, England was at war with France, and so would not let us send wheat to that country to sell.

Last of all, England refused to let us sell anything, we raised or made, to the islands which she owned in the West Indies. That was a great loss to us.

President Washington sent John Jay (§ 139) to London to settle these disputes. He made a treaty, or agreement, between the United States and England by which we got possession of the forts, but that was about all.

Many of our people were greatly disappointed because Jay did not succeed in doing more. They were so angry that they called him and the President abusive names; but the greater part of the people believed that we had done well.

They said, Patient waiters are no losers; the next time we make a treaty with England we shall do better. They were right. We have made many treaties with England since then, and we have certainly lost nothing by them.

145. Death of Washington; three new states added to the Union.—Washington had been elected President twice. He was glad to go back to his beautiful home at Mount Vernon on the banks of the Potomac.¹ Two years later, he died there (1799). The whole country mourned the loss of the great and good man, who had gained the War of American Independence, and who had been the first President of the United States.

While Washington was in office three new states were admitted to the Union. They were Vermont, Kentucky, and Tennessee. That made sixteen states in all.

¹ Potomac (pō-tō'māk).

146. Review. — While Washington was President, the United States raised money to pay the debts which we owed at the end of the Revolutionary War. Next, we established a mint at Philadelphia to coin our first gold and silver money; we also took the first census.

Many people from the eastern states now began to move to the Ohio Country and to other parts of the West. General Wayne forced the Indians to give up a large tract of land to them.

Eli Whitney invented the cotton gin in 1793. This machine made cotton raising very profitable not only to southern planters but to many people in the North. For this reason they now wanted to increase the number of slaves in the country.

John Jay made a treaty with England by which we got possession of Detroit and other forts on the northern boundary of the country.

Finally, the three new states of Vermont, Kentucky, and Tennessee were added to the Union, making sixteen in all.

JOHN ADAMS, SECOND PRESIDENT (1797-1801)

147. We have more trouble with France; we build some famous war ships. — Our second President was John Adams of Massachusetts. The French who had made President Washington so much trouble (§ 142) now began to make more. They threatened to fight us unless we gave them “plenty of money.”

President Adams said, “America is not scared.” The people shouted, “We will give millions of dollars to defend the country, but we will not give the French one cent.”

Congress then ordered three war ships to be built. The first one was named the *Constitution* (§ 137). We shall see, by and by, that she proved herself to be a grand ship, well worthy of her name. We fought and captured a French vessel of war and gained the victory over two more. When the French found that instead of giving them "plenty of money" we gave them plenty of cannon balls they were glad to make peace.

148. Congress passes two new laws; what Kentucky and Virginia did about them (1798-1799).—But there were some people in America who seemed to think more of France than they did of their own country. They abused President Adams, and said that we ought to have given France money instead of fighting her.

In order to stop that kind of foolish talk, Congress passed two laws.¹ These laws punished foreigners living here who were bent on doing mischief. Next it punished all those who spoke evil of the President or the Congress of the United States.

The two states of Kentucky and Virginia declared that these new laws were wrong and that they ought not to be obeyed.² But none of the other states in the Union would say that they agreed with them, and so nothing was done about the matter, though at that time it made great excitement.

149. Review.—While John Adams was President, the French demanded money from us. We not only refused to give them a single cent, but we built war ships and fought them until they begged for peace.

¹ These were the Alien and Sedition Acts.

² These were the Kentucky and Virginia Resolutions.

Congress passed two laws to punish those who abused the President because we had fought France. Kentucky and Virginia said that these laws ought not to be obeyed, but none of the other states stood by them.

THOMAS JEFFERSON, THIRD PRESIDENT (1801-1809)

150. The new capitol building at Washington ; the African pirates. — Thomas Jefferson, who wrote the Declaration of Independence (§ 123), became our third President. When he went to the city of Washington, the new capitol



JEFFERSON'S HOUSE AT MONTICELLO, VIRGINIA

building had just been completed. Nearly all the country around it was then covered with woods.

To-day Washington is fast growing to be one of the most beautiful cities in the world. The capitol has been rebuilt

and it is the largest and finest building there. Many people who are good judges believe that there is nothing grander to be seen anywhere.

Jefferson¹ was not a man who liked war, but soon after he became President he had to fight some African pirates.



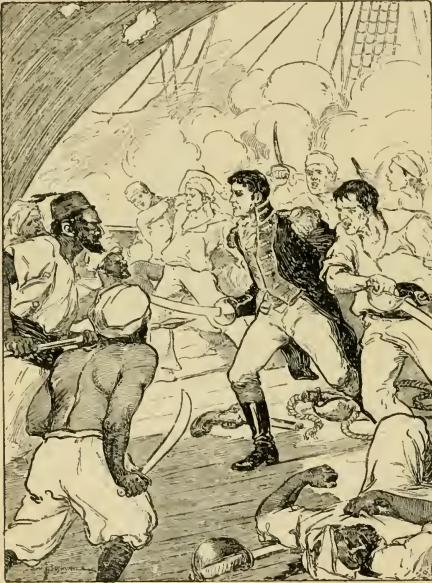
A ROOM IN JEFFERSON'S HOUSE

The people living in Algiers² and Tripoli,³ on the north coast of Africa, had become very bold and impudent. They used to stop our merchant ships in the Mediterranean and rob them. They even went so far as to carry off the sailors and make slaves of them. They refused to let these poor men go free unless the United States would pay them large sums of money.

¹ See the Life of Thomas Jefferson in Montgomery's "Beginner's American History" in this series. ² Algiers (ăl-jēr'z'). ³ Tripoli (trīp'ō-lī).

Jefferson said this must be stopped. He sent several of our war ships to punish these pirates. The Americans fired so many hot shot into the rascals that they very soon begged for mercy.

151. The State of Ohio admitted; we buy the Louisiana Country, 1803. — While the war with the African pirates



FIGHTING THE AFRICAN PIRATES

was going on (§ 150), the new state of Ohio was admitted to the Union. This made seventeen in all (§ 145).

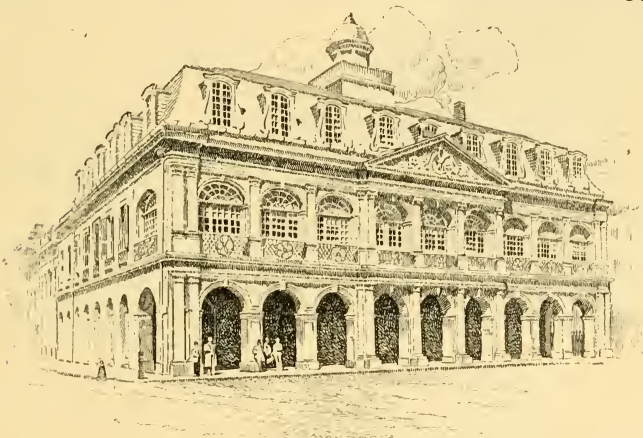
That same year, 1803, President Jefferson bought the French city of New Orleans on the Mississippi River (§ 96) and the whole of the great Louisiana Country (§§ 96, 107) west of that river (see map on

page 168). It covered more than a million square miles, and Napoleon Bonaparte,¹ who was then emperor² of France, sold it to us for fifteen millions of dollars. He did that because he was in great need of money.

¹ Napoleon Bonaparte (nā-pō'le-ŋn bo'nā-pärt).

² Spain had sold the Louisiana Country back to France; see § 107.

It was not only the largest piece of land which the United States ever purchased, but it was the cheapest, for we got it for less than three cents an acre. If you look on the map on page 168, you will see that it made the American republic more than twice the size it was before. For when Washington became President, the United States did not extend farther west than the Mississippi.



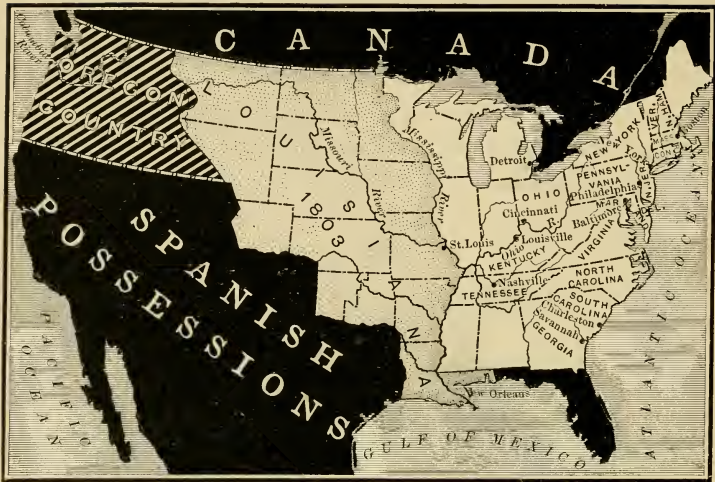
THE CABILDO ¹

(The building in New Orleans where France sold us Louisiana)

Beyond that river we did not own a piece of ground as big as a man's hand. But now that we had got the Louisiana Country, we could carry the stars and stripes a thousand miles west of the great river; we could plant them on the highest ridge of the Rocky Mountains, and we could say, All this vast territory belongs to us.

152. Lewis and Clark explore the Louisiana Country and pass through the Oregon Country. — Of course everybody

¹ Cabildo (kă-bil'dō), or City Hall.



THE UNITED STATES IN 1803, AFTER THE PURCHASE OF LOUISIANA

wanted to know what kind of a bargain we had made in buying so much land. Jefferson sent two young men named Lewis and Clark to find that out.

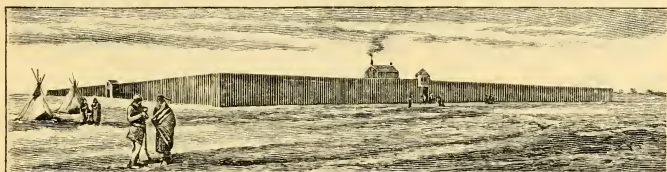
They started from St. Louis (1804), which was then a little French village of whitewashed log cabins, with only two American families in the place. They went up the Missouri River in boats as far as the Rocky Mountains. They saw no white men, for all that part of the West was then covered with tribes of roaming red men, who hunted buffalo on the great plains.

President Jefferson was a wise man, but he thought that we should not want to make any settlements or build any towns in that wild country for a hundred years. The hundred years have passed, and you can look on the map and count the states and the cities and towns

which you find there, and then say whether you think the President made a mistake or not.

After Lewis and Clark had reached and crossed the Rocky Mountains, they entered a branch of the Columbia River and floated down the stream until they came to the Pacific Ocean.

But though they were the first Americans who crossed the wilderness of Louisiana, another American had entered the Columbia River before them. Captain Robert Gray, of Rhode Island, who first carried the stars and stripes around the world, had sailed up that river a short



THE FORT AT ST. LOUIS IN 1803

distance (1792). He raised the American flag there, and declared that the Oregon Country¹ belonged to the United States by right of discovery (see map facing page 158).

153. What Aaron Burr set out to do. — But while we were making the United States immensely larger by the addition of this vast western territory, Aaron Burr set out to steal a part of the republic (1806). Burr was a bold, bad man, who was always plotting some kind of mischief. He had shot Alexander Hamilton (§ 139) in a duel, and then ran away to the South to escape punishment.

¹ The Columbia River gets its name from the ship *Columbia* in which Captain Gray sailed; before that time it was called the Oregon River. The name "Oregon Country" comes from that river, and so does the name of the state of Oregon.

While he was at the South he was secretly planning something. It is generally believed that he meant to get possession of New Orleans. If so, he intended to make it the capital of a new nation, which he hoped to rule over like a prince or a president, — no one knows which. Burr seems to have thought that he could persuade the



LEWIS AND CLARK EXPLORING THE LOUISIANA COUNTRY

people of the southwestern part of the United States to join him in this plot for breaking up the American republic.

But he failed in all he undertook. He was arrested and tried for treason, — that is, for being an enemy to his own country, as Benedict Arnold was (§ 132), — but the court set him free at last. After that, very few people cared to have anything to do with him. They looked upon him as a man who loved evil rather than good, and who would tear the stars from our flag if he thought he could do it safely.

154. We get into trouble with England and France; the English search our ships; the Embargo. — England and France had been at war for a long time, and each one of these nations ordered the United States to stop trading with the other. If, for instance, a New York shipowner



THE ARREST OF AARON BURR

sent an American vessel loaded with wheat to France, an English war ship would seize it. If, on the other hand, a merchant in Charleston, South Carolina, sent a cargo of cotton to England, a French war ship would seize that.

These things were bad enough, but worse things were coming. England, at that time, was in great need of sailors on her war ships. A good many of them had run away and had got places on our merchant vessels.

The king of England gave orders to the captains of his war ships to stop our vessels on the ocean and search

them for British seamen. When they found any they would carry them off. Oftentimes they would take American sailors, for they did not care much, as long as they got some good men, and they would force them to go on board their war ships and fight against France.

This went on for a number of years. At last the English captains grew so bold that they actually stopped and searched an American ship of war. That was something they had never dared to do before. The *Leopard*,¹ an armed British vessel, stopped the American man-of-war *Chesapeake*² and took four sailors from her. One of them they said was a deserter from an English vessel, so they hanged him.

Congress was very angry, and many members wanted to go to war at once, but a larger number thought that we had better wait. Finally the order was sent out that none of our merchant vessels should leave port (1807). This order, which was called an *embargo*,³ caused great distress in New England, because it threw thousands of our sailors out of work and put an entire stop to our trade on the ocean. At last the embargo made so much trouble that it had to be given up.

155. Robert Fulton's wonderful boat, 1807; the first bicycle. — Up to this time people had always depended on sails for moving any kind of vessel bigger than a row-boat. If, for instance, a merchant living in New York wished to go up the river to Albany, on business, he had to go by a sailing vessel. It often took him three or four days to make the journey.

¹ Leopard (lěp'ěrd).

² Chesapeake (chěs'a-pěk).

³ Embargo (ěm-băr'gō).

Robert Fulton¹ thought that he could build a vessel which would do better than that. He constructed a boat which was moved by paddle wheels driven by steam. In the summer of 1807 he gave notice that he should start for Albany and would take any passengers who wanted to go with him.

A great crowd of people gathered to see the fun, for very few of them believed that Fulton's queer-looking craft would start. But when Fulton appeared on deck and spoke the word, Go! his steamboat began to move upstream. She did not stop moving until she



THE FIRST BICYCLE

reached Albany, thirty-two hours later. From that day the steamboat kept traveling on the Hudson. Before many years had gone by, steamboats like Fulton's were going up and down the Ohio, the Mississippi, and backward and forward across Lake Erie and the other Great Lakes.

The Indians looked in astonishment at the white man's "fire canoe," as they called it, which could go upstream against the current a good deal faster than they could paddle downstream.

¹ See the Life of Fulton in Montgomery's "Beginner's American History" in this series.

Later on (1819), an American steamship called the *Savannah* made the first trip across the Atlantic that had ever been made by a vessel of that kind.

While travel on the water was making such rapid progress, people were trying other experiments. A man in France invented a riding machine. The rider pushed himself along by pressing his toes on the ground. By working very hard he could get along a little faster than if he walked. A carriage-maker in Boston built some of these queer machines (1818), but he did not succeed in persuading many to use them. Nearly fifty years later some one made an improvement in the wheels, and now bicycles are seen flying about everywhere.

156. Review. — While Thomas Jefferson was President we punished the African pirates who had stopped our vessels on the Mediterranean. Next, we bought the Louisiana Country of France in 1803. It was the largest territory ever added to the United States and it more than doubled it in size. Lewis and Clark first made their way across it and went on to the Pacific. They passed through the Oregon Country which Captain Robert Gray had already claimed as ours by his discovery of the Columbia River.

Aaron Burr was arrested and tried, for an attempt to break up the United States by force of arms, but was allowed to go free for want of proof.

Later, we got into trouble with England and France because they seized our vessels on the ocean. The captains of English war ships stopped our merchant ships, carried off our sailors, and forced them to fight against the French. They finally stopped and searched the *Chesapeake*, one of our war ships.

Congress ordered an embargo which shut up all American merchant ships in our ports, but that rule soon had to be given up.

In 1807 Robert Fulton built the first steamboat which went up the Hudson; in a few years steamboats were running on the western rivers and on the Great Lakes, and later (1819), an American steamship—the first one of its kind—crossed the Atlantic. About the same time, a riding machine was invented which in time became the bicycle.

JAMES MADISON, FOURTH PRESIDENT (1809-1817)

157. General Harrison's fight with the Indians. — James Madison became the fourth President of the United States. He tried hard to settle our quarrel with England, but he did not succeed. However, we soon had other things to think about, for a terrible Indian war broke out in the territory west of the state of Ohio. A famous chief named Tecumseh¹ accused the white men of cheating the Indians out of their lands. He resolved to drive them from that part of the country.

President Madison sent General Harrison to put down the Indians. While General Harrison's men were in camp on the banks of the Tippecanoe² River in Indiana Territory, the savages made up their minds to attack them. They crept slyly up at night. They crawled on their hands and knees through the tall grass until they came to where the soldiers were sleeping. Then they suddenly rose up, and, swinging their hatchets, rushed with a wild yell on our men.

¹ Tecumseh (tɛ-kŭm'sɛh).

² Tippecanoe (tɪp'ɛ-kə-nōō').

The soldiers not only stood their ground, but they completely beat the Indians. Then, pushing on, they burned the Indian village with its cornfields. Soon everybody in the country was talking of the victory we had gained at the battle of Tippecanoe.

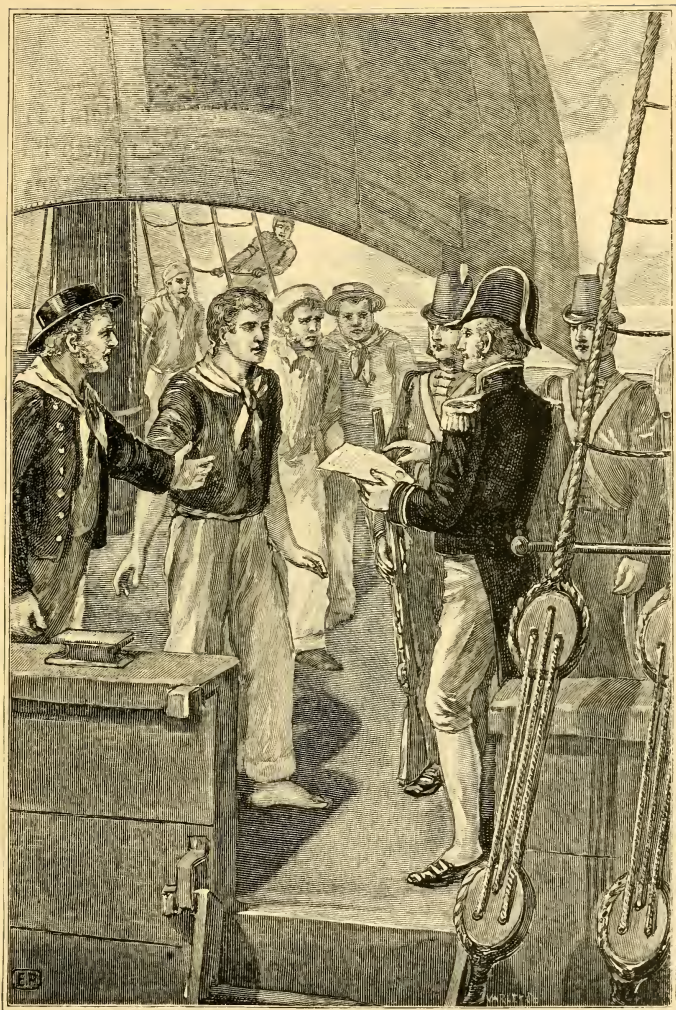
158. Our second war with England, 1812.—Meanwhile the captains of English war ships kept stopping our merchant vessels and taking sailors from them (§ 154). In this way the king of England had managed to get several thousand Americans, and he made them help him fight his battles at sea against the French.



At last we could bear this no longer. We told the king that unless he stopped taking our men we should fight. He refused to stop, and in the summer of 1812 Congress declared war, — our second war with England.

159. We get ready to make an attack on Canada, but get beaten; our later victories.— We thought it would be a good plan to begin the war by attacking the British in Canada. But we made a bad start. General William Hull went to Fort Detroit, intending to have a battle with General Brock, who commanded an army of Canadians and Indians. Before Hull got ready to move, the English general came up and demanded the surrender of the fort (see map on page 178).

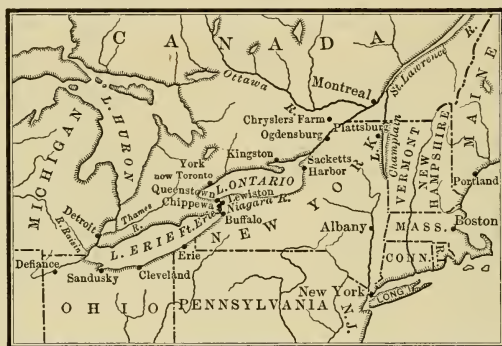
General Hull had not nearly as many men as the English, and he was afraid that if he got beaten the savages would kill all the women and children in Detroit. He hoisted a tablecloth for a white flag, to show that he



BRITISH OFFICERS TAKING AN AMERICAN SAILOR FROM A SHIP

would give up the fort, and General Brock's army took possession of it.

The country was so angry to think that General Hull did not fight that they cried out, Punish him, punish him! He was tried by a court made up of soldiers, and sentenced to be shot as a coward. But the President pardoned him because he was an old man and in the War of the Revolution he had shown himself to be a brave soldier.



We did not give up fighting Canada, and later on we gained several battles there. But we shall see that all of our great victories, except one, were gained on the ocean or on the lakes.

160. The English take the city of Washington; the "Star-Spangled Banner." — At the East, the English captured the city of Washington and burned the Capitol and other public buildings.

They also tried to take Baltimore. That city was defended by Fort McHenry¹ (see map on page 179). A fleet of British war ships set out to knock it to pieces.

¹ McHenry (mak-hĕn'ri).

They fired at it all night, but they found the fort was too hard a nut for them to crack. When the sun rose everybody looked to see whether the stars and stripes had been hauled down. Great was our joy when we saw that "our flag was still there."

One man was so delighted at the sight that he pulled an old letter from his pocket and wrote on the back of it the famous song of the "Star-Spangled Banner." Soon all the people in the country were singing it.

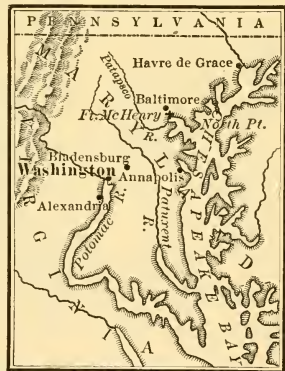
161. The Yankee ship *Constitution* whips the British ship *Guerrière* (1812).—It will be remembered that the first war ship which Congress built for our new navy was the *Constitution* (§ 147). One of the London papers called her "a bundle of pine boards." We now sent out that "bundle" to see what she could do in a war with England.

Some people thought that it was very foolish to dare to match our twelve or fifteen fighting ships against Great Britain's huge fleet, numbering not far from a thousand. But there were others who said, Go and read that story in the Bible, and see how the boy David slew the giant with a single small pebble.¹

Now, Captain Isaac² Hull, who commanded the *Constitution*, was like the boy David. He was afraid of nothing, and when he fired, he fired to kill.

¹ 1 Samuel xvii.

² Isaac (i'zàk).



Captain Hull met the British ship *Guerrière*¹ not far away from the coast of Nova Scotia. The British captain began to fight at once. Captain Hull, like "Brer Rabbit" in the negro story,² did n't say anything, but kept quiet and would not let his guns speak a word. Then, when the enemy's vessel had got almost up to him, he gave the order, and the guns of the *Constitution* spoke!

In about twenty minutes the British ship was knocked all to pieces. Then, after Captain Hull had taken her crew out of her, he set her on fire and blew her up.

The *Constitution* came out of the battle with very little damage. The shipbuilders in Boston had built her of solid oak, not pine, and the people were so delighted with her work that later on they named her "Old Ironsides."³ To-day the grand old ship lies in a place of honor off Charlestown navy yard, and numerous visitors go to see her every year.

This battle on the ocean was the first of many which we fought there. We gained twelve out of fifteen. A champion baseball team would find it hard work to do better than that.

162. What the Americans did on Lake Erie and on Lake Champlain. — The next year (1813) Commodore⁴ Perry started out on Lake Erie in command of a fleet of small vessels. Most of them he had built of trees growing on the shore of the lake.

¹ *Guerrière* (gâr-rÿ-âr').

² J. C. Harris's "Stories of Uncle Remus."

³ The *Constitution* was built at a shipyard in Boston near the spot where Constitution Wharf now stands.

⁴ Commodore (kôm'mô-dôr').

He had a fight with a British fleet much stronger than his own, and, after a terrible contest, he won the day (see map on page 182). When the battle was over we had cleared the lake of the British. We then made them give up Detroit to us (§ 159). Commodore Perry wrote to



A BATTLE AT SEA IN THE WAR OF 1812

General Harrison, who was in command of the American army, "We have met the enemy, and they are ours."

Commodore Macdonough¹ commanded a little American fleet on Lake Champlain.² He was soon able to write what Commodore Perry had written, for he beat the British in Plattsburg Bay (see map on page 178).

¹ Macdonough (mak-dŏn'gh).

² Champlain (shăm-plān').

163. Jackson's great victory at New Orleans (1815). — Now, to finish up with, General Andrew Jackson¹ undertook to show the British what American sharpshooters could do in a fight on land.

Everybody knew that he could handle any number of Indians, for he had beaten them the year before in Alabama territory. The question was whether he could do even better than that. For now he had to defend the city of New Orleans against an attack by some of the best soldiers in the English army.

General Pakenham,² with ten thousand men, set out to take the city.

General Jackson had only half as many men; but a good part of them were old hunters who could put a bullet through anything that was as big as a squirrel's eye.



Jackson threw up a bank of earth and logs to protect his army and then waited for the redcoats to come on. They came with a rush; but they never got over the bank, for Jackson's cannon mowed them down in heaps, and his sharpshooters killed hundreds more.

The British general was shot, and his men were left without a leader. They did not fear to face death. They declared that they would far rather die than be beaten by the Yankees. But at last they saw that they must

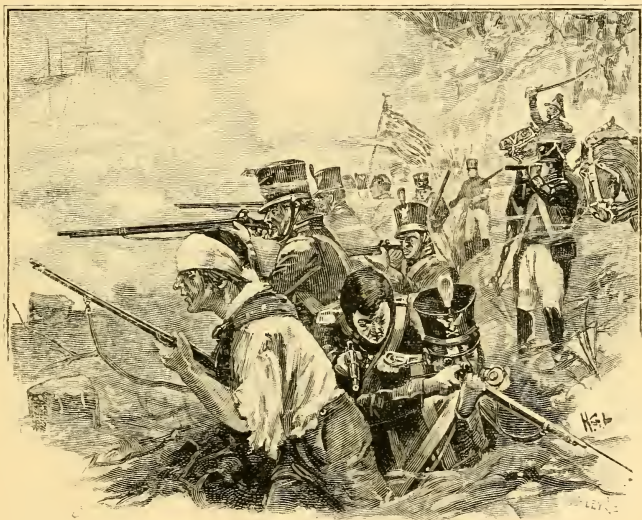
¹ See the Life of General Jackson in Montgomery's "Beginner's American History" in this series.

² Pakenham (pāk'ən-əm).

give up the struggle and confess that General Jackson had fairly won the fight.

This was the last battle of the war. The contest had been going on for two years and a half (1812-1815). It is always called the War of 1812 because it began in that year.

164. What we gained by the War of 1812; growth of the Union. — The War of 1812 did this good for us: it



BATTLE OF NEW ORLEANS

made the United States as independent on the ocean as the Revolution had made us independent on land. The British never again tried to stop our ships or take any more American sailors out of them (§ 154).

Since that war we have had no real trouble with England. To-day England and America are as good friends as if neither one had ever fired a gun at the other.

While Madison was President we added two new states to the Union. They were Louisiana and Indiana. This made the whole number nineteen.

165. Review. — Under President Madison, General Harrison fought the battle of Tippecanoe and completely whipped the Indians in that part of the West.

Shortly after that, the United States declared war against England, — the War of 1812. We fought because England stopped our merchant ships at sea and carried off American sailors from them.

In the beginning of the war we got beaten on land, but our war ships gained almost every battle at sea and on the lakes.

The last great battle of the war was fought by General Jackson at New Orleans. He cut the British army to pieces. After peace was made the English never again troubled our ships or carried off any of our sailors. We had made ourselves independent on the ocean, and we have always kept that independence. The stars and stripes are now as much respected on the sea as they are on land.

JAMES MONROE, FIFTH PRESIDENT (1817-1825)

166. Joy that peace was made. — Our fifth President was James Monroe. He had fought in the Revolution, and the gray-haired soldiers who had marched in the ranks with him welcomed him with shouts of joy.

Every one was in good humor then, because every one was pleased to think that the War of 1812 was over and that peace had been made (§ 163). Men did not say,

Now, good times are coming ; but they said, The good times have come — and they meant every word they said.

167. War with the Florida Indians ; we buy more land. — But in one way the peace did not last long, for the next year (1818) General Jackson (§ 163) had to go to Florida to fight the Indians there. He conquered them, and then the king of Spain thought that he had better sell Florida ¹



The light parts of this map show the extent of the United States in 1819, after we had bought and added Florida. The black and white bars in the northwest show that the ownership of the Oregon Country was still in dispute between the United States and Great Britain

to us (§§ 15, 107). He was afraid that if he kept it we should send more armies into that country to fight the Indians, and that he should have a great deal of trouble with us.

We paid the Spanish king five millions of dollars for the country and so added the territory of Florida to the United States (1819) (see map above).

¹ England had given back Florida to Spain in 1783.

This was our second great land purchase. When we bought the Louisiana Country in 1803 (§ 151), that gave us an abundance of room to grow toward the west; now that we had added Florida we could grow toward the south.

168. How we settled a troublesome question about Missouri, 1820.—Thus far, while Monroe was President, three new states had entered the Union, — Mississippi, Illinois, and Alabama, — making the whole number twenty-two.

Of these twenty-two states eleven were at the North. They held no slaves, and for that reason they were called free states. The remaining eleven were at the South, and, as they owned negroes, they were called slave states.

All of these twenty-two states, except the state of Louisiana, lay wholly on the east side of the Mississippi River. Up to that time nothing had ever been said about making a new state which should lie entirely on the west side of that river.

But shortly after we bought the territory of Florida (§ 167), a part of Missouri territory, all of which was west of the Mississippi, asked to be admitted as a new state. It wished to hold slaves and to take the name of the state of Missouri. When Congress took up this question it roused more angry feelings than anything that had happened since America had gained its independence.

This was because a great change had taken place at the North. Many of the people there had begun to think that it was wrong to hold black men as slaves. They were determined that all the rest of our territory lying west of the Mississippi River should be formed into free states.

But the people of the South were just as determined to have their share of that territory for slave states.

They were afraid that if they did not get it the North would become so strong that in time it would compel Congress to set every negro free.

While this great dispute was going on between North and South about Missouri, Maine (§ 59) asked Congress to let her come in as a free state.

The people of the South said, No. If we can't have Missouri, you people of the North shall not have Maine. If one must stay out, then both shall.

169. What Henry Clay did in 1820. — Henry Clay was a southern man and a member of Congress, but he was a



THE MISSOURI COMPROMISE ACT (1820)

great peacemaker. He said, Don't let us quarrel about this any longer. Here is a plan which has been offered and which ought to satisfy both sides.

1. Let Maine come in as a free state—that will please the North.

2. Let Missouri come in as a slave state—that will please the South.

3. Then let Congress say that all the rest of the territory west of the Mississippi, which lies north and west of the state of Missouri, shall be free *forever*.

Congress agreed to this, and admitted Missouri and Maine. That made twenty-four states in all,—twelve free and twelve slave states (see map on page 187). So for a time North and South were both satisfied. This was called the Missouri Compromise¹ of 1820 because each side promised to give up something to please the other.



THE NATIONAL ROAD

170. The United States builds a great road to the West.—But the spread of slavery was not the only question which people talked about in those days. There was another subject which seemed to many of them quite as important. Thousands of families in the East wanted to go into the country west of the Alleghany Mountains and buy farms there.

They could get to certain parts of it by going down the Ohio River in barges or by steamboats (§ 155), but they wanted a road by which they could strike directly into the heart of Ohio, Indiana, and Illinois. No such

¹ Compromise (kõm'prõ-miz).

road then existed, though an attempt had been made to make one. The question came up whether Congress ought not to build such a highway.

The emigrants said Yes. The farmers who had already settled in that western country said Yes. The merchants at the East who wanted to get more western trade said Yes. But the President did not feel sure that Congress



TRAVELING WESTWARD OVER THE NATIONAL ROAD

had the right to take the nation's money to build such a road. A good many members of Congress thought as he did, so nothing was done at that time.

Henry Clay again came forward (§ 169). He lived in Kentucky and he felt deeply interested in the whole West. He believed that Congress ought to do everything it possibly could to help the growth of that part of the United

States. He begged earnestly that they would build a National Road from the Atlantic to the Mississippi River. Finally Congress decided to do it, and the work was pushed forward. The road never reached the Mississippi; it only got about halfway across Illinois. But it helped many of the western states to grow to be greater and richer than even Henry Clay dared hope (see map on page 188).

The people beyond the Alleghanies showed their gratitude by putting up a monument to Clay. It stands by the roadside near Wheeling, West Virginia. It calls the great Kentuckian the "Father of the National Road."

171. Trade on the Western Rivers.—But while the new road was being built, and in fact long afterward, the people on the western rivers made great use of them for highways of trade. The Ohio and the Mississippi were crowded not only with steamboats but with huge flatboats carrying corn, flour, and pork. When Abraham Lincoln was only seventeen he, with another boy, started off with a flatboat loaded with farm produce. They went down the Ohio and the Mississippi to New Orleans; there they sold the stuff and the boat too.¹

Then there were great rafts of boards and other lumber which were floated down these rivers and sold to build houses with. There were broad, square-built emigrant boats which carried families, with all their horses, cattle, and furniture. These emigrants had a merry time as they glided along on their way to a new home somewhere in what was then called the West.

¹ See the Life of Lincoln in Montgomery's "Beginner's American History" in this series.

So, you see, these rivers were all alive with a rough, strong, good-natured, and good-hearted class of people. They could work their way or fight their way through anything, and they made that whole country hum with industry, as a hive of bees hums on a hot summer day.



FLATBOAT WITH EMIGRANTS GOING DOWN THE OHIO RIVER

172. “America for Americans.” — We have seen how the people of the United States made themselves independent of Great Britain on land by the War of the Revolution (§ 135), and on the ocean by the War of 1812 (§ 165).

But we did not rest even there, for now President Monroe claimed for America still another kind of independence.

He said that the kings of Europe had no right to meddle with those parts of America which did not belong to them. England stood by us then, and said the same thing. If, for instance, the people of Mexico saw fit to

set up a republic like our own, or if the people in South America wished to do so, then Spain must not try to stop them.

America, said the President, belongs of right to Americans, and Americans can take care of themselves, and mean to take care of themselves.¹

That was a new way of looking at this continent, but the king of Spain and all the other kings of Europe learned to accept it. In fact, to-day no one openly disputes the right of America to be let alone and to grow up in its own way.

173. Lafayette comes to visit us (1824).— But there was at least one European who was sure of getting a hearty welcome in the United States. That was the brave and generous French soldier, Lafayette (§ 126). He had been the friend of Washington; he had fought for us when he was a boy of nineteen; now he was an old man and he was coming to see us.

He would find America had grown. When he left us at the close of the Revolution we had only thirteen states, now we had twenty-four. Lafayette visited every one of them.

Wherever he went the people crowded about him with delight. The old soldiers who had fought under his command shed tears of joy when they saw him and clasped him by the hand. Even the Indian chiefs that he had known were full of delight at seeing him once more.

He had spent large sums of money to help us in our dark days. He had clothed and fed not a few of those who had been in his regiments. But now he came to us

¹ This is called the Monroe Doctrine.

poor. He had seen much trouble and he needed friends. We did not forget him. When he went back to France we sent him in one of our finest war ships. He went rich in the gifts of money which Congress made to him. But he went back richer still in the respect and affection which our whole country showed to him.

174. Review. — While James Monroe was President we bought Florida and added it to the United States. We admitted the five new states of Mississippi, Illinois, Alabama, Maine, and Missouri to the Union, making twenty-four in all.

We permitted Missouri to come in as a slave state, but on condition that all the rest of the territory north and west of it should remain free *forever*. We undertook to build a great National Road through the West to the Mississippi. We said, Europe must let the continent of America alone and let it grow up in its own way. We welcomed Lafayette as an old friend. Every state in the Union treated him as a guest of honor, and Congress gave him all that he needed for the comfort of his old age.

JOHN QUINCY ADAMS, SIXTH PRESIDENT (1825-1829)

175. The opening of the Erie Canal (1825). — John Quincy Adams was the sixth President we elected. We have seen (§ 170) that the people living in the eastern states had a great desire to open up ways for reaching the country west of the Alleghany Mountains. The construction of the National Road (§ 170) did much to help them; but the state of New York resolved to dig a canal reaching from the Hudson River to Lake Erie.

In some ways this would be far better than a road, because it is always easier and cheaper to carry passengers and freight by water than by land.

Gangs of laborers began to dig at Albany. After eight years of hard work the last shovelful of earth was thrown out, and the long ditch was completed (1825). It ended at Buffalo, three hundred and sixty miles west of the Hudson. The canal was the greatest piece of work of the kind which had ever been done in the United States.

People could now start from New York City by steamboat (§ 155), go to Albany, step on board of a canal boat, and in less than a week they would arrive at Buffalo. That was quick traveling for those days. Then, if they liked, they could take a steamboat on Lake Erie and go to Cleveland, Ohio, or to Detroit, Michigan, or even as far west as Wisconsin — and that was then thought to be very far west indeed.

Thousands of emigrants went west by the canal. A part of them pushed on beyond Buffalo and settled in the states which border on the Great Lakes. But many of them stopped at different places in New York. They built up the cities of Utica, Syracuse, Rochester, and Buffalo, besides many smaller towns along the banks of the canal.

The canal brought wheat and farm produce from the West to the East, and it helped in many ways to make New York the "Empire State," — that is, the greatest state in population and wealth in the Union.

176. Building the first iron road in America in 1830. — But now something was to be done which would make people forget to talk about canals (§ 175) or national roads (§ 170).

Ever since Robert Fulton made the first trip up the Hudson by steamboat (§ 155), men had been trying to make a wagon which would go by steam. At length, after many failures, a locomotive was invented in England, and a railway was opened there connecting the two great cities of Manchester and Liverpool.

When the news came to America, people here said, We need locomotives and iron roads quite as much as



PASSENGERS ON A CANAL BOAT

they do in England. Yes, we need them more than they do, because we have a country that is nearly forty times larger than England.

While John Quincy Adams was President, a company began to build a railway from Baltimore toward the Ohio River. Peter Cooper of New York made the first engine

which ran over the road in the year 1830. That railway was only thirteen miles long when it began business, and only about a dozen passengers dared to travel in a car that was drawn by steam.

All the railways in the United States had their beginning in that little one started in Maryland. Now, look



OPENING THE FIRST RAILWAY

at the map on page 278, which shows the railways of America. You will see that the whole country is covered with tracks. They extend in every direction, like a great iron spider web. If the web was straightened out, as you would straighten out a piece of tangled string, it would reach more than two hundred thousand miles. That means that it would go more than four times around the world; yet this line is still growing longer.

177. Temperance reform. — President John Quincy Adams took a lively interest in all improvements. He

wanted to see better roads, better farms, and better schools. He wanted also to help men to lead better lives.

One of the evils of that time was that most people drank a great deal of liquor. It was a common thing then for storekeepers to treat their customers to a glass of whisky or rum when they bought several dollars' worth of goods. Farmers, too, thought that they must give liquor to the men who worked for them in the hayfield. Again, when the frame of a new house or church was put up, some kind of strong drink would be served out by the pailful.

This state of things led to a great deal of drunkenness. A number of good men of that day resolved to try to find a cure for this sad condition. They formed the American Temperance Society (1826), and this, with others, did much good. They certainly helped in many ways to make the world a better and a happier place for us all to live in.

178. Review. — While John Quincy Adams was President the state of New York opened the great Erie Canal extending from Albany on the Hudson River to Buffalo on Lake Erie. It made traveling to the West far cheaper and easier; it helped emigrants to go West, it brought wheat to the East, and it also helped to build up many cities and towns throughout New York state.

A few years later the construction of the first railway was begun in the United States; it was opened in the year 1830. To-day the railways of America, if extended in a straight line, would reach more than four times around the globe.

President John Quincy Adams did everything he could to help on these improvements, and he also felt a great interest in temperance reform.

ANDREW JACKSON, SEVENTH PRESIDENT (1829-1837)

179. Our first western President.—All of the six Presidents that we had elected had come from the states east of the Alleghany Mountains.¹ Andrew Jackson of Tennessee, our seventh President, was the first one who came from the country west of those mountains.

General Jackson, or “Old Hickory” as he was called at the West,² was a great favorite with the people in that part of the country. A good many of them had helped him fight the Indians at different times, and others had been with him at the famous battle of New Orleans (§ 163).

180. A new kind of newspaper appears (1831).—General Jackson had been President less than two years when a new kind of newspaper came out in Boston (1831). It was published by a young man of the name of Garrison.³ Garrison was so poor that he had to do all the work on the paper himself. He wrote all the articles, set them up in type,—for he was a printer by trade,—and printed them on a small press. He named his paper *The Liberator* because his object was to free the slaves in the South, and to free them at once. In the first number of *The Liberator* Mr. Garrison said, “I am in earnest . . . and I will be heard.”

Most of the people in the South who owned negroes said that the young man must be crazy. A great many

¹ Four came from Virginia (Washington, Jefferson, Madison, and Monroe) and two from Massachusetts (John Adams and John Quincy Adams).

² See the Life of Andrew Jackson in Montgomery's “Beginner's American History” in this series.

³ William Lloyd (loid) Garrison.

people in the North had the same feeling ; they said, Oh, this young printer is wrongheaded. But there were a few men who took his side. They replied, Well, at any rate, he is wrongheaded in the right direction.

As time went on the excitement over *The Liberator* seemed to increase. Those who read it began to hold public meetings for setting the negroes free. Of course they did not mean to go South into the cotton fields, where the negroes were at work, and tell them they were at liberty and could stop picking cotton. But they meant to make everybody see that slavery was bad and that all slaves ought to have their freedom given them without waiting another day.

Sometimes a crowd would rush in and break up these meetings, for many thought they did nothing but mischief. Once such a crowd got hold of Mr. Garrison and handled him very roughly.

181. Talk about breaking up the Union.—After a time a large number of societies were formed in the North which demanded that slavery should be done away with, or at least not allowed to spread any farther. The people who belonged to these societies said, Let us have no more slave states admitted to the Union ; then, perhaps, slavery will die out in the South.

But Mr. Garrison was not satisfied. He said, We must not wait ; we must get rid of slavery now. If we can do nothing else, let us split the republic into two pieces. Let the slaveholding states go their way, and let the free states stand separate by themselves.

But all the Northern people except a very few said No. They did not believe in breaking up the Union. They

thought that it would be as foolish to do that as it would be for a farmer to burn his barns down to get rid of the rats.

182. What South Carolina did about a tax (1832).— Now it happened that at the time the people of the North were disputing about slavery and the Union, the planters in South Carolina got into a dispute about the same subject. But in the South it took a different form.

The planters wanted to buy their woolen and cotton cloth for themselves and their slaves in England, because they could get such things cheaper there than in the North. But Congress had passed a law which put a tax of a certain number of cents on every yard of English cloth sent over here. This, of course, made it very expensive. The tax was called a protective tariff (§ 140). The object of it was to protect or help the mill owners at the North who manufactured woolen and cotton goods.

John C. Calhoun was a South Carolina man and a member of Congress. He said, This tax is not fair, and it ought to be given up. The people of his state called a great meeting and resolved that they would refuse to pay the tax.¹ Then they went further still and said, If President Jackson tries to make us pay it we will leave the Union and make South Carolina an independent state all by herself.

Here, then, we see the two sides. There were a few men at the North who felt ready to tear the country in two rather than have any slaves kept at the South (§ 181). But, on the other hand, there were some slaveholders in the South who declared that they would break up the Union rather than pay a tax they did not like.

¹ This refusal to obey the law was called Nullification.

President Jackson said to the people of South Carolina who had made the trouble, I was born in your state, but I shall do my duty by you just the same. You must obey the laws of the United States; you must pay this tax or I shall send soldiers to make you.

But just when it looked as if a real fight was coming, Henry Clay "the peacemaker" again came forward (§ 169). He persuaded Congress to make the tax much lower. This satisfied South Carolina, and so the matter ended.

183. Two new states added; growth of the West; Indian wars; cheap farms. — While General Jackson was President two new states were added to the Union; one was the slave state of Arkansas,¹ the other was the free state of Michigan. This made twenty-six states in all, or just double the number with which the republic began not quite fifty years before.

The Erie Canal (§ 175), the steamboats on the Great Lakes and the western rivers (§ 155), the National Road (§ 170), and the new railways (§ 176) all helped to fill up the West with people.

The Indians in Illinois and in the territories of Wisconsin and Iowa fought hard to keep out the white people. But in every case they were beaten in the fight and had to give up more and more of their land. So too in the South the Indians were driven out of Florida and Georgia, and compelled to go across the Mississippi River.

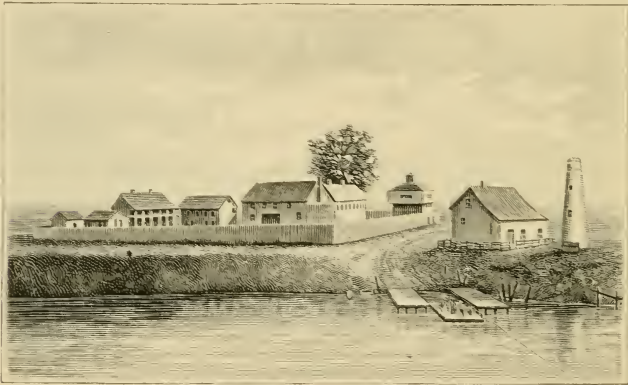
As fast as the Indians were conquered, emigrants from the eastern states would go West and take farms. The United States sold the land to them for a dollar and a quarter an acre. Think of getting a whole acre of land, on which

¹ Arkansas (är'kən-sä').

twenty bushels of wheat could be raised, for half as much money as you would have to pay for a first-rate football!

It was that cheap land that made the West grow so fast. Farmers did not have to pay for it all at once. They could wait until they had sold wheat and pork enough to get the money.

Another thing which made the West grow was that farmers could now do their work quicker. Mowing



OLD FORT DEARBORN, CHICAGO

machines and reaping machines had been invented, and these saved a great deal of labor and a great deal of time.

184. **Western towns.**—While farms were increasing in number all through the northwest, villages were going up too. Buffalo, Cleveland, and Detroit were getting to be quite fair-sized places. Milwaukee¹ was a little town where a few people carried on trade with the Indians, but it was soon to grow larger.

¹ Milwaukee (mīl-wā'kē).

Then at the southern end of Lake Michigan there was a wooden fort,¹ which when General Jackson became President had a few houses standing around it. No one then supposed that settlement would get to be much bigger. But Chicago,² as the place was named, took a start just as a colt does, and began to grow, and it has kept on growing ever since. To-day it is the largest city in the United States directly west of New York.

185. Review. — General Andrew Jackson was the first western man who became President of the United States. Not long after he became President, Garrison began to publish *The Liberator*, a paper which demanded that all the slaves should be set free. This led to talk about breaking up the Union.

About the same time some slaveholders in South Carolina threatened to break it up if the President should try to make them pay a tax on English goods. Henry Clay got Congress to make the tax lighter and so ended the difficulty.

While General Jackson was President, the West grew very rapidly. The two new states of Arkansas and Michigan were added to the Union, making twenty-six in all, or just double the number with which the republic began.

MARTIN VAN BUREN, EIGHTH PRESIDENT (1837-1841)

186. Hard times and what they taught us. — Soon after Martin Van Buren became our eighth President (1837) the people everywhere began to complain of hard times. Factories and mills stopped running. Thousands

¹ Fort Dearborn.

² Chicago (she-ka'gō).

of workmen were thrown out of employment, and many business men who had been making money found it difficult to get a dollar.

One reason for this distress was that when times had been good many people had run in debt for furniture, carpets, and clothes which they did not really need. Others had bought large pieces of land hoping to sell them again at a great profit, but they had been disappointed.

In the country things were not as bad as they were in the cities. The farmers could always get enough to eat, for they could raise wheat, corn, and potatoes for themselves. But in New York City crowds of men and women cried out that they could not get bread for themselves and their families. In several cases they broke into the stores and carried off flour and provisions to keep from starving.

Luckily the hard times did not last very long. In some ways, too, that year (1837), which was often called the black year, proved at last to be a good friend. It taught a great many Americans a new Declaration of Independence, that was, *to keep out of debt*; for the man who does that always feels that he is a free man.

187. How America drew people from Europe; ocean steamers.— Later on, great numbers of emigrants from Ireland, Germany, and other countries of Europe began to come to America. They were drawn here very much as a bunch of tacks is drawn to a magnet. If you put the magnet on the table near a little pile of tacks they will all fly to it and stick to it. So now, every young laboring man in Europe seemed to want to fly to this country. He felt it drawing him away from his old home.

In Europe many of these hard-working people found it very difficult to get food and clothes. Some of them lived in little huts built of sticks and mud, with no floor but the earth. They were young and strong and full of hope. They knew that they could find plenty to do at good wages in America, so they made haste to come.



IMMIGRANTS LANDING IN AMERICA

Lines of ships were crowded with them, but there was plenty of room out West. Thousands of them went there. They helped to build up the country. If they had not come the United States would not have as many people as it has to-day and it would not be nearly as strong and rich as it is.

About the time these immigrants commenced to come in such large numbers, ocean steamers began to run regularly between New York and Liverpool (1840). For

a number of years the immigrants came in sailing vessels, but after a time the steamers brought them over. Now they bring all who come. Sometimes a single steamship will land nearly two thousand here, or enough to make a pretty fair-sized country town. In the course of a year a great army arrives, oftentimes as many as five hundred thousand, or even more.

The greater part of these people now come from Italy and other countries of southern Europe. Many of them get work building our new railways or digging coal in our coal mines.

Lately Congress has passed laws which decide what immigrants may land here. We want all those who are healthy, strong, industrious, and honest. But we mean to send back the cripples, the beggars, the thieves, — in fact, all those who come here because the countries where they were born are glad to get rid of them.

188. Review.—Shortly after Martin Van Buren became President very hard times set in, and thousands of people found it difficult to earn enough to live. But in the end the hard times helped a great many to learn to keep out of debt, and to save money which they once spent foolishly.

Later, an immense number of laboring men began to come here from Europe. They made themselves homes at the West and were a great help to the country.

The ocean steamers now bring hosts of immigrants. The United States intends to let in all who are worth having and to send the rest back.

GENERAL WILLIAM HENRY HARRISON AND JOHN TYLER, NINTH AND TENTH PRESIDENTS

(1841-1845)

189. The election of General Harrison.—The people of the West had never forgotten General Harrison's victory over the Indians at Tippecanoe (§ 157). They now wanted to see this Indian fighter, who had lived in a log cabin in Ohio, go to the "White House." With shouts and songs of "Tippecanoe and Tyler too," they elected him our ninth President, and made John Tyler of Virginia Vice President.

General Harrison died a few weeks after he came into office and then, according to law, John Tyler took his place and became President.

190. What Professor Morse succeeded in doing with electricity, 1844.—Three years later, in 1844, Professor Morse¹ of Massachusetts did a wonderful thing—one which the world will always remember. He had long been trying to find some way by which he could send messages quickly from one place to another. Of course letters could now be sent by the steam cars in much less than half the time that they could when Washington was living.

But though steam was fast, it was too slow to satisfy Mr. Morse. He knew of something that could travel fifty miles—yes, a thousand miles if you like—before the wheels of the swiftest locomotive could turn around twice. That something was electricity.

¹ See the Life of Professor Morse in Montgomery's "Beginner's American History" in this series.

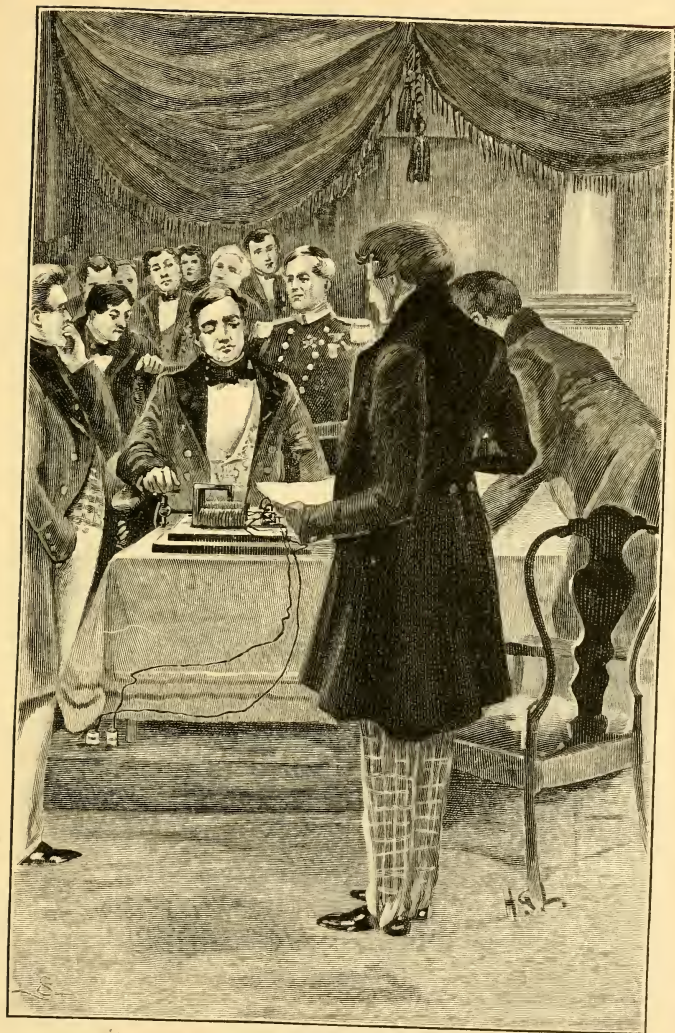
But he did not know how to get electricity to carry the word he wanted to send. He spent more than ten years endeavoring to discover how that could be done. He was very poor, and he often had to go without his dinner, and sometimes, perhaps, without his supper besides. But he kept patiently at work, however hungry he might be, and at last he hit on the right way of doing what he sought. He did it in this way. He stretched a very long piece of wire from one place to another. Then he fastened a steel point to the farther end of the wire in such a manner that when he sent a current of electricity over it the steel point would move and would make a dot or a dash on a piece of paper.

Now these dots and dashes stood for letters of the alphabet. One meant A, another meant B, and so through the whole list to Z. He could now spell out any word he pleased by electricity, so, of course, he could ask a question over the wire or he could send a message by it.

191. Professor Morse builds the first line of Telegraph, 1844; the Telephone (1877). — Professor Morse called this wonderful invention the telegraph. He asked Congress to give him thirty thousand dollars to build a telegraph line from Baltimore to Washington, a distance of about forty miles.

Many members of Congress thought it would be a waste of money to do this. They did not believe the inventor could send a message over a wire as far as that. But finally, after a good deal of talking and a good deal of fun over it, they voted to let him have the thirty thousand dollars, and he built the telegraph line.

It was the first one ever put up in the world. On a beautiful morning in the spring of 1844 Professor Morse



PROFESSOR MORSE SENDING THE FIRST TELEGRAM

sent over the wire these words taken from the Bible: "What hath God wrought!"¹

These words were sent from the Capitol at Washington to Mr. Vail, Professor Morse's partner, at Baltimore. He returned them to Washington. It was all done in a minute.

Then every one knew that the telegraph would work. To-day you can send a message in this way to any city in the United States and to almost any great city in the world. The telegraph wires not only cross our country in every direction, but they even cross the bottom of the Atlantic and Pacific oceans. They extend to Europe, Asia, Africa, Australia, and New Zealand.

But after a time the telegraph was outdone, in a way, by the telephone² (1877). That was invented by Professor Bell of Boston. It is a kind of telegraph by which you can talk to a man in a building in the next street to you, or to a person in a city fifteen hundred miles away. He hears all you say, and you hear all he says.

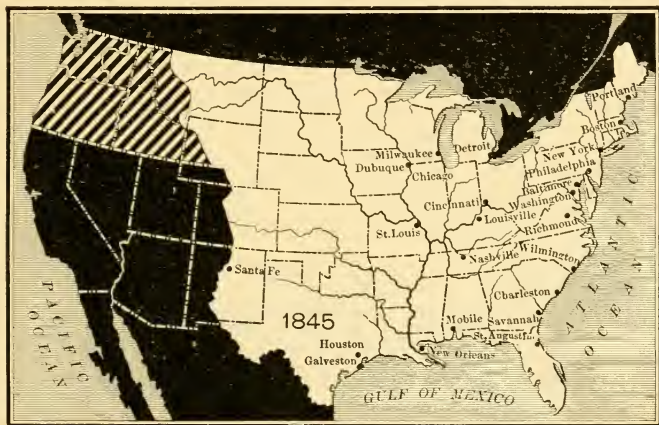
192. We get the "Lone Star Republic," and admit a new southern state to the Union. — Within less than a year after Professor Morse sent his first electric message, we had added a new piece of land to the territory of the United States, and on the same day we admitted a new slave state to the Union. The new piece of land was Texas, and the new state was Florida.

No one objected to letting Florida come in, for every one understood when we bought that territory (§ 167) that it would become a slave state.

¹ Taken from the book of Numbers, xxiii. 23. The original message sent by Professor Morse can be seen in the Athenæum in Hartford, Connecticut.

² Telephone (tĕl'ĕ-fōn).

But with Texas the case was different. It once belonged to the republic of Mexico. But a good many Americans had gone there and had taken farms and bought negroes to work on them. Then the people of Texas declared themselves independent of Mexico. They made Sam Houston¹ President, and they raised a flag which had a



Map showing the extent of the United States after we added Texas in 1845. The black and white bars show that the ownership of the Oregon Country was still in dispute between the United States and Great Britain

single star on it to show that they stood alone. They called themselves the "Lone Star Republic."

But Texas was not satisfied to stand alone long, for the people wished to join the United States. It was an immense country, large enough to cut up into five states as big as New York or Pennsylvania, and then have enough land left over to make a state more than twice as large as Massachusetts.

¹ See the Life of Sam Houston in Montgomery's "Beginner's American History" in this series.

Most of the members of Congress from the South were eager to get such a country as that, because they hoped that it would be divided into a number of slave states, and they naturally wanted as many such states as they could get (§ 168).

But many of the northern members of Congress were determined to keep Texas out if they could. There were two reasons for this feeling. First, some of them believed that slavery was wrong, that it did a great deal of harm, and that it ought not to be allowed to spread to any new land. Next, there were others who did not care much about slavery, but they felt certain that if we admitted Texas we should get into a war with Mexico, and they did not want war.

This difference of feeling made a hot dispute between the North and the South, just as there had been about the admission of Missouri many years before (§ 168). Well, the South gained the day. Texas was annexed, or added, to the United States. It made the third great piece of land we had added (§§ 151, 167); we shall see that under the next President it was admitted as a slave state¹ (see map on page 211).

193. Review. — In 1844 Professor Morse built the first line of telegraph in the world. It extended from Baltimore to Washington. He sent the first message over it in the spring of that year. Since then lines of telegraph have been constructed all over the United States, and carried across the Atlantic and Pacific to Europe, Asia, Africa, Australia, and New Zealand. The telephone, invented by

¹ Texas was annexed under President Tyler, March 3, 1845; it was admitted to the Union December 29 of the same year, under President Polk.

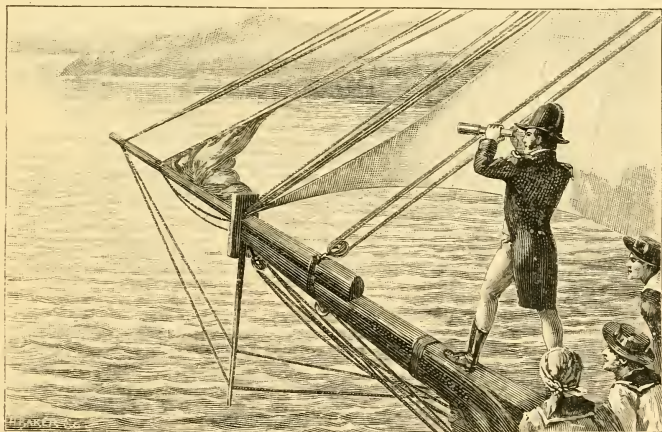
Professor Bell a good many years later, now makes it possible to talk with people over very long distances.

While John Tyler was President we annexed Texas, and added Florida to the number of slave states in the Union. Texas was the third great piece of land we had added. The whole number of states was now twenty-seven.

JAMES K. POLK, ELEVENTH PRESIDENT (1845-1849)

194. "Give us Oregon!" — The first question which came up after James K. Polk¹ became our eleventh President was about the Oregon Country.

You remember that while Washington was President, Captain Robert Gray of Rhode Island sailed into the Columbia



CAPTAIN GRAY TAKING POSSESSION OF OREGON

River. He raised the stars and stripes there, and declared that Oregon belonged to the United States (§ 152).

¹ Polk (pōk).

That was the way we got our first claim to any part of the Pacific coast. Then a little more than ten years later, Lewis and Clark explored that country by sailing down the Columbia (§ 152). That gave us our second claim to Oregon. Still later, a number of Americans went out there and settled. These things made us consider that the whole of that great region through which the Columbia River flows was the property of the United States (see map below).



But England said that we had made a mistake. The king declared that most of that region belonged to him because some English fur hunters had visited it before Captain Gray did.

This dispute had been going on for years. It now came up hotter than ever, because a good many members of Congress thought that we ought some time to add Oregon as a free state in order to balance the slave state of Texas (§§ 192, 196).

Then many people began to cry out, "Give us Oregon! Give us the *whole* of Oregon, or we will fight!" But luckily no fighting had to be done, for the United States and Great Britain came to an agreement (1846), and divided Oregon between them (see map above). We obtained all that part of the country through which the Columbia River actually flows, and England got the territory north of it. This made the fourth great piece of land we had added to

the American republic since the Revolution ¹(§§ 151, 167, 192). By looking on the map below, you will see that it made the northern part of the United States extend through to the Pacific Ocean.

195. War begins with the Republic of Mexico (1846). — But the year we got the Oregon question settled, trouble began with the republic of Mexico. When Texas was



Map showing the extent of the United States after we added the Oregon Country in 1846

annexed to the United States (§ 192) the people of that territory declared that it was bounded on the west by the Rio Grande² River. But Mexico said that Texas had no right to any part of the country farther west than the Nueces River.³ This made a difference of about a

¹ First Louisiana was added in 1803, then Florida in 1819, then Texas in 1845, and now Oregon in 1846. See the maps on pages 168, 185, 211, 215.

² Rio Grande (rē'ō grān'dā).

³ Nueces (nwā'sēs).

hundred miles (see map on page 217). Rather than give up that narrow strip of land we resolved to fight.

We sent General Taylor with an army to take possession of the land which Texas claimed as hers, and war began in the spring (1846).

General Taylor,¹ or "Old Rough and Ready," as his men liked to call him, gained every battle which he fought. By so doing he got possession of all that part of Mexico near the lower end of the Rio Grande River.

The next year General Taylor came home, and General Scott² went out by sea with a second army. He took the Mexican city of Vera Cruz,³ on the coast of the Gulf of Mexico (see map on page 217). Then, fighting his way, he pushed on westward across the mountains until at last he entered the City of Mexico, which was the capital.

There he raised the stars and stripes over the palace where the Mexican president lived. That victory ended the war. General Scott, like General Taylor, had defeated the Mexicans in every battle. So in this remarkable war our soldiers had everything their own way from the beginning to the end.

There were three young American officers who fought in that war that we shall hear of, by and by, in a far more terrible war. We may as well get their names now. They were Lieutenant⁴ Ulysses S. Grant, Lieutenant Jefferson Davis, and Colonel⁵ Robert E. Lee.

¹ General Zachary Taylor of Louisiana.

² General Winfield Scott of Virginia.

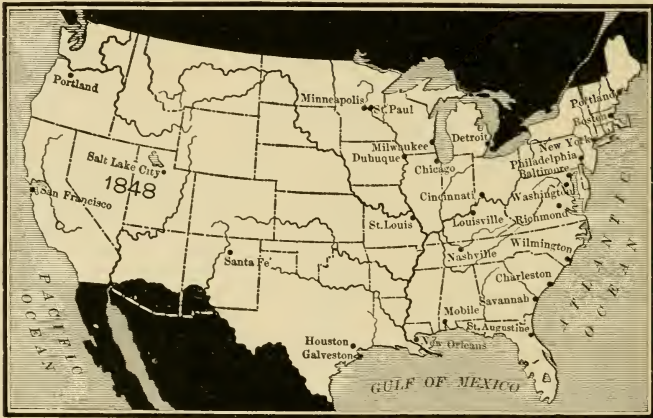
³ Vera Cruz (vā'rā krōōs).

⁴ Lieutenant (lū-tēn'ant), an officer next below a captain.

⁵ Colonel (kūr'nel), the commander of a regiment.

Then all three were fighting on the same side and under the same flag. But when we meet them again we shall find the first one of them fighting still under the stars and stripes, but we shall see the other two marching against him, and marching, too, under a strange flag.

196. We add more land to the United States, 1848; three new states admitted. — When peace was made, Mexico



Map showing the extent of the United States in 1848, after Mexico let us have California and New Mexico

gave us an immense tract of land. It extended from the Pacific coast eastward to the Rocky Mountains. You will see by the map above that it included not only all of California,¹ but also Utah,² New Mexico, and Nevada,³ besides parts of Colorado,⁴ Wyoming,⁵ and Arizona.⁶ This was the fifth addition we had made to the territory of

¹ California (kāl'ī-fôr'nī-ā).

² Utah (ū'tā).

³ Nevada (nē-vā'dā).

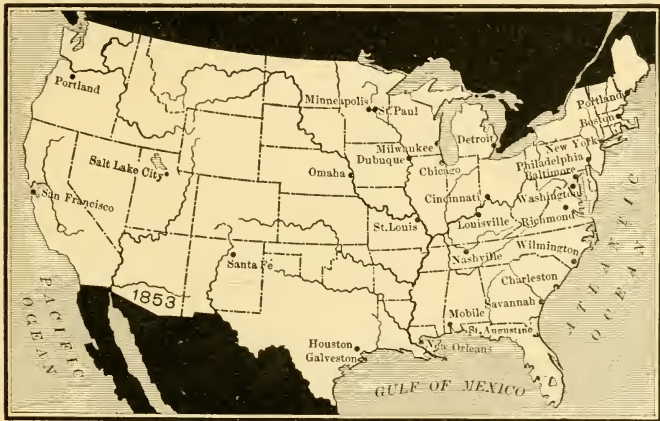
⁴ Colorado (kōl'ō-rā'dō).

⁵ Wyoming (wī-ō'mīng).

⁶ Arizona (ār-ī-zō'nā).

the United States since Washington's day (§§ 151, 167, 192, 194). A few years later (1853), we added a sixth piece,¹ which we bought of Mexico, and which was called the Gadsden² Purchase — because General James Gadsden bought the land for us.

By this time, too, we had admitted three more states to the Union, namely Texas, Iowa, and Wisconsin. Texas was the



This map shows the extent of the United States in 1853, after we had added the land called the Gadsden Purchase, bought from Mexico; the land is marked, on the map, "1853"

last slave state which came in. We now had thirty states in all, besides a vast western territory which could be cut up into more. The American republic, in nearly its whole height from north to south, now stretched across the continent from the Atlantic to the Pacific (see map above).

¹ We added the Louisiana Country in 1803, Florida in 1819, Texas in 1845, the Oregon Country in 1846, and now the territory obtained from Mexico in 1848, and in 1853 by the "Gadsden Purchase" (see maps on pages 168, 185, 211, 215, 218, 219).

² Gadsden (gădz'dən).

197. What we discovered in California (1849). — Not long after we came into possession of the territory of California (§ 196), something very remarkable happened there. Captain Sutter,¹ who had a large farm in that country, began building a sawmill on a little stream² about a hundred miles from San Francisco.³

One of the men at work there was walking along through a ditch which had been dug for the water to run off, when he saw some bits of bright yellow metal shining in the dirt.



He picked them up, and said to himself, This looks like gold. He took it where it could be carefully examined, and it proved to be just what it looked like, for it really was gold.

As soon as the news got abroad, nearly every white man in California made a rush for the place where the gold had been found. They soon began digging in all directions. In most cases they discovered small pieces of the precious metal in the sand and gravel. Then the diggers grew wild when it became certain that they could pick up money, or what was as good as money, out of the earth on which they stood.

198. The rush to California by sea and by land. — It took some time for the wonderful news to get to the East, for in those days there was no regular mail which carried

¹ Sutter (sut'ēr).

² It was at Coloma (kō-lō'mă) on a branch of the American River (see map above).

³ San Francisco (săn frăn-sīs'kō).



FINDING GOLD IN CALIFORNIA

letters across the continent. But when the papers throughout the United States began to publish accounts of what had been found in California the excitement became very great.

Thousands of young men left farms, stores, and factories, and started for the new "land of promise." Others took their families and followed. All of them hoped to bring back riches.

Many of the gold seekers went by sea to San Francisco. That was a terribly hard journey, because they had to go



GOLD SEEKERS ON THEIR WAY TO CALIFORNIA

by ship around Cape Horn, or else across the Isthmus¹ of Panama² (see map on page 275). If they chose the first way, it meant a voyage of more than twelve thousand miles, and they might be nearly a year getting there. If they chose the second they got there in much less time. But they suffered dreadfully on the Isthmus as they climbed over the rocks where the hot sun made many of them sick.

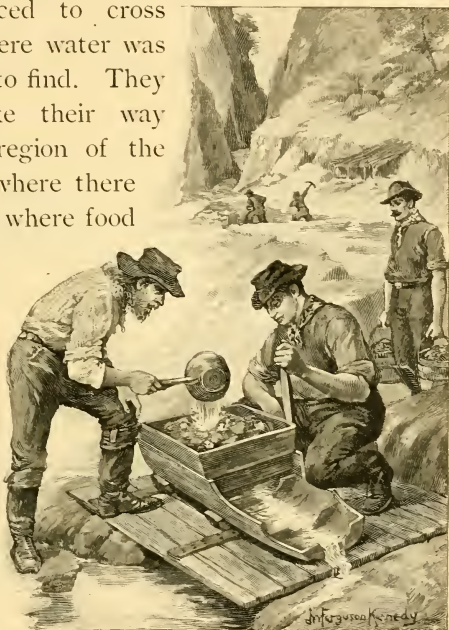
Those who went across the country from the eastern states did not find the journey any easier. After they had reached the Mississippi River they still had nearly

¹ Isthmus (is'mūs).

² Panama (pān-ā-mā').

two thousand miles to go. There were no railways then west of the Mississippi. The emigrants had to travel as best they could. Some went on horseback, some in wagons drawn by mules or oxen, and some toiled along on foot.

They were forced to cross immense plains where water was often very difficult to find. They had next to make their way through the wild region of the Rocky Mountains, where there were no good roads, where food was scarce, and where the Indians were ready to kill every white man they possibly could. Last of all they had to climb the steep Sierra¹ Mountains, which shut in California on the east like a lofty wall; and even then, after they had got so far,



WASHING GOLD OUT OF THE DIRT

they still had some distance farther to go before they reached the diggings (see maps on pages 217 and 220).

But no hardship, no suffering, no danger could stop these men. Day after day the long line kept crawling along toward the Pacific. It was easy to see which way they went, for their track was marked by the white bones

¹ Sierra (sē-ēr'ra).

of the horses and mules and oxen which had dropped dead from toil or from hunger.

In a single year's time nearly a hundred thousand people had entered the territory of California. No such emigration to any new part of the United States had ever been known before. In five years the miners had dug out of the earth between four and five hundred millions of dollars' worth of gold.

199. Opening up other parts of our "New West"; emigrants to Oregon and to Utah. — But California was not the only part of our "new West" which drew people to it. A number of years before gold was found there, emigrants had begun to go out to the Oregon Country (§ 194). They had taken up farms in the valley of the Columbia River and had commenced to build up that region.

Still later, the Mormons¹ left Illinois and Iowa² and went west to Utah. They did not emigrate in search of riches, but because they wanted to go where they could build up a state to suit themselves. At that time Utah was a wilderness, with no white people living in it.

The Mormons built their first homes in a desert as dry as ashes. It seemed impossible to raise wheat or corn in such a soil as that. But the new settlers dug trenches which brought down little streams of running water from the mountains. They worked very hard, and in the course of time they completely changed the looks of everything. They had farms covered with fields of grain, and pasture

¹ The Mormons held very different ideas about religion from what other people did. The people of the East disliked them, and when they drove them out from Illinois most of the Mormons went to Utah.

² Iowa (ĩ'ō-wā).

lands green with waving grass, and orchards full of apples and other fruit. The farmers, too, raised herds of cattle and sheep, and every one seemed to live comfortably and to get plenty to eat. The Mormons called their largest settlement Salt Lake City, because it was built not very far from the Great Salt Lake (see map on page 218).

200. Settlements made in Kansas, Nebraska, and Colorado; the "pony express"; the telegraph. — Some years



MORMONS GOING WEST

after the Mormons went out to Utah, and after President Polk had gone out of office, people began to move to Kansas territory and to build towns there. Leavenworth,¹ Topeka,² and Lawrence were three which soon became well known. In like manner emigrants went into Nebraska³ territory and made settlements there. They

¹ Leavenworth (lěv'ĕn-wŏrth). ³ Nebraska (nĕ-brās'kə).

² Topeka (tō-pĕ'kə).

built Omaha,¹ Lincoln, and many smaller towns (see map opposite page 305). The first postmaster in Omaha began by carrying the mail around in his hat, but he soon had to find something bigger. When gold was found in Colorado territory (1858) great numbers of people hurried to the spot. They began a little settlement which grew to be the city of Denver (see map opposite page 305).

Soon a line of stagecoaches started running between Leavenworth, Kansas, and Denver. Besides taking passengers these stages carried small parcels of goods which the miners sent to the East to get.

Meanwhile the people in California wanted to send their letters to the East and get letters back in shorter time.



PONY EXPRESS ACROSS THE PLAINS

The stage company put a "pony express" on the road to help them. The men or boys who rode these ponies carried the mail. They made their horses fly as rapidly as whip and spur could urge them on.

¹ Omaha (ō'mā-hā').

Each rider went a certain number of miles and then stopped, while a fresh rider on a fresh horse seized the mail bag and hurried on with it. In this way they traveled two hundred and fifty miles a day until they reached



INDIANS ATTACKING OVERLAND STAGE

the end of the road at Sacramento,¹ California, if they were going westward, or at St. Joseph, Missouri, if they were coming toward the east. The whole distance was very nearly two thousand miles.

This went on for about two years, and then a telegraph line was completed across the continent (1862). Then, of course, many people used that, for an electric wire could beat everything else at carrying the news or delivering a message.

¹ Sacramento (săk-ră-měň'tō), the capital of California.

201. The overland stage to California. — But in order to accommodate passengers, a line of stagecoaches now began to run from Leavenworth, Kansas, across the country to California. Each of these coaches was drawn by six mules.

The passengers carried rifles and revolvers to fight the Indians. Colonel William F. Cody, who is better known as "Buffalo Bill," drove one of these stages. He says that they had to fight white savages sometimes, as well as red ones, for highway robbers used, once in a while, to try to stop the coach.

When the people on the coach were attacked they had to race for their lives. The driver cracked his whip like a pistol and lashed his galloping mules. The coach bounced and rocked, like a ship in a gale, as it flew over stones and through deserts of dust. The yelling savages fired at it from all sides; the passengers fired back; each tried his best to kill the other. That helped to make up a day's life in some parts of what was then called the "Wild West."

202. Building the first Pacific railway (1869). — After five or six years had gone by, the people of the United States made up their minds that the overland stage had done its full work. They said, Now we must have a railway to the Pacific. In order to get on faster with it, men began building the iron road at both ends. One gang of laborers commenced at Omaha, Nebraska, while the other was digging up the ground at Sacramento, California.

The great Pacific Railway was finished in 1869, or twenty years after President Polk's time. When the wild Indians saw how the locomotive could get over the ground, and

heard the war whoop it could give, they stepped back. They felt that the time had come when they must let the white man go where he liked and do as he liked.

Since that time four more Pacific railways have been built.¹ They have carried settlers by tens of thousands and hundreds of thousands into the "new West." If you look on the map on page 278, you will see how many states these five great railways run through. The locomotive and the iron road made those states. They were built up by steam.

203. Review. — While James K. Polk was President we made a treaty, or agreement, with Great Britain by which we got possession of Oregon territory.

That same year (1846) we began war with Mexico in order to get a strip of land which Texas claimed as hers. We gained every battle we fought in that war, and when peace was made, Mexico gave us an immense piece of land. It included California, Utah, and Nevada, besides parts of New Mexico, Colorado, and Wyoming. It was the fifth great piece of land we had added to the United States.

We also admitted the three new states of Texas, Iowa, and Wisconsin. This made thirty states in all.

Shortly before peace was made with Mexico, gold was discovered in California. It caused a great rush of people to that territory, and so we began making settlements on that part of the Pacific coast. Such settlements had already been begun in Oregon, and the Mormons had built Salt Lake City in Utah.

¹ The first railway was the Union, and Central Pacific; the four, built later, were the Atchison, Topeka and Santa Fé; the Southern Pacific; the Northern Pacific; and the Great Northern.

After James K. Polk was no longer President, emigrants began to pour into Kansas and Nebraska territories, and later into Colorado. A "pony express" was started across the western country to California. Then came the telegraph and a line of stagecoaches, and last of all, the first Pacific Railway was built. It was followed by four other iron roads. These five great railways opened up the "new West" and filled it with people.

ZACHARY TAYLOR AND MILLARD FILLMORE,
TWELFTH AND THIRTEENTH PRESIDENTS
(1849-1853)

204. The dispute about California. — Not long after General Taylor (§ 195) became our twelfth President, California asked to be admitted to the Union as a free state.

President Taylor had a plantation in Louisiana, and he owned several hundred negroes, but he wanted California to come in free. He thought that America would be better off not to have another slave state added. Henry Clay (§ 182) was a slaveholder in Kentucky, and he felt as President Taylor did. He had once believed in extending slavery at the West (§ 169), but he had come to think that it was a mistake.

But John C. Calhoun of South Carolina (§ 182), and many other southern members of Congress, did not agree with the President or with Henry Clay. They wanted to see California, and all the rest of the territory we had got from Mexico, made into slave states. They believed that slavery was a good thing. They thought that every

black man ought to have a master who would keep him at work raising cotton, rice, sugar, and tobacco.

Most of the northern members of Congress felt as Abraham Lincoln did. He said, No man is good enough to own another man. Every one, no matter how black his skin may be, has the right to all that he honestly earns.

Last of all, there were a few northern members of Congress who did not care whether the negro was held in bondage or whether he was set free. They said, Let the people of each new state, when it comes into the Union, decide for themselves whether they will hold slaves or not.

205. Henry Clay's plan for settling the dispute; the Compromise of 1850. — While this dispute was going on Henry Clay came forward, for the third time, to make peace (§§ 169, 182).

He said, Let each side promise to give up something to the other, and then we shall settle this troublesome question. Then he told Congress what his plan of compromise was. It was made up of these three parts.

1. Let California come in as a free state; that will satisfy the people of the North.

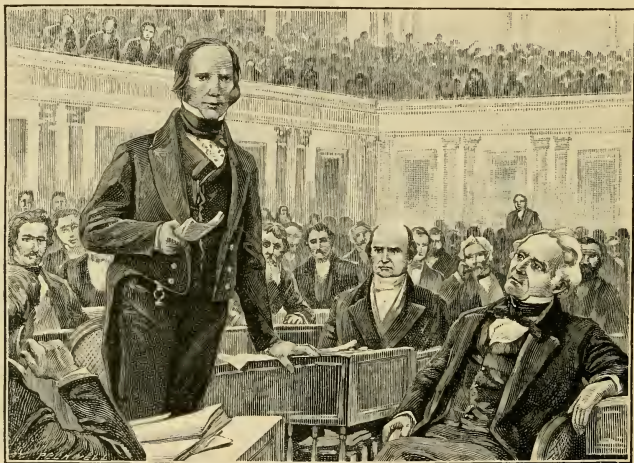
2. Let the people of all the rest of the territory which Mexico gave us¹ decide for themselves whether they wish to come into the Union as free states or as slave states; that will satisfy them, and it will satisfy some members of Congress besides.

3. Let Congress make a new slave law,² which shall make it easy for slaveholders to catch their runaway

¹ That is, in Utah, Nevada, and the remainder of the territory which we got from Mexico (§ 196). ² This was the Fugitive Slave Law of 1850.

negroes at the North and take them back where they belong; that will satisfy the South.

206. Congress accepts Henry Clay's Compromise; California is admitted (1850).— Daniel Webster of Massachusetts thought that Henry Clay's plan of settling the dispute was an excellent one. He did everything in his



HENRY CLAY SPEAKING FOR THE COMPROMISE

power to persuade Congress to accept it. He said that it was the only way in which the Union could be kept together.

On the other hand, John C. Calhoun (§§ 182, 204) fought Clay's plan with all his might. He said it did not do enough for the South. He declared that if Congress accepted it America would split into two republics. One of these would be made up of free states and the other of slave states; they would hate each other and make war upon each other.

But Congress thought that Clay and Webster were right. They believed that Clay's plan was the best that could then be contrived. They voted for it, and peace was made. But before they did that, President Taylor had died and Vice President Fillmore had become our thirteenth President. This was in the year 1850. California was admitted before the year was over. It made the thirty-first state.

207. Review. — When General Taylor became President, California asked to be admitted as a free state. The South opposed this. Congress disputed about it for a long time, and at last, after President Taylor had died and Vice President Fillmore had become President, it accepted Henry Clay's plan of compromise. Then California was admitted as the thirty-first state in the Union. It came in free, as the people there wished it to do.

FRANKLIN PIERCE, FOURTEENTH PRESIDENT
(1853-1857)

208. The new territories of Kansas and Nebraska; the people begin to quarrel about slavery again. — The year after Franklin Pierce became our fourteenth President a fresh quarrel about slavery came up (§ 206).

You remember that when Congress agreed to admit Missouri as a slave state it was on a certain condition. That condition was that all the land north and west of Missouri should remain free *forever* (§ 169). That was in the year 1820. In 1854 the broad, level country northwest of the state of Missouri was called the Platte Country,¹

¹ Platte (plät).

because the Platte River, a branch of the Missouri, ran through it (see map on page 217). Some people thought that the best use we could make of it would be to give it to the western Indian as a sort of "happy hunting ground."

But Stephen A. Douglas,¹ who was a member of Congress² from Illinois, did not think that would be the best plan. He said, The Platte Country is too good to give to the Indians; let us take it and divide it into two new territories. We will call the northern territory Nebraska, and the southern territory Kansas. Then we will leave it to the people of these two territories to decide whether they will have slaves or not.

Many of the people at the North cried out against this. They said, Congress has no right to make these two new territories and then tell the inhabitants that they can do as they like about having slaves. Congress solemnly promised in 1820 that all that part of the United States should remain free for all time (§ 169). That promise must be kept.

But Senator³ Douglas replied, When Congress agreed to do that it made a mistake. We believe that the people who live in a territory must know better than any one else whether they want slaves or don't want them.

Those who thought Senator Douglas was right outnumbered the others, so Congress finally voted in 1854 to do what he asked them. The two new territories of Kansas and Nebraska were made (see map on page 235), and it was left to the inhabitants to bring in negroes or keep them out, just as they saw fit. But trouble soon began, and it commenced in Kansas.

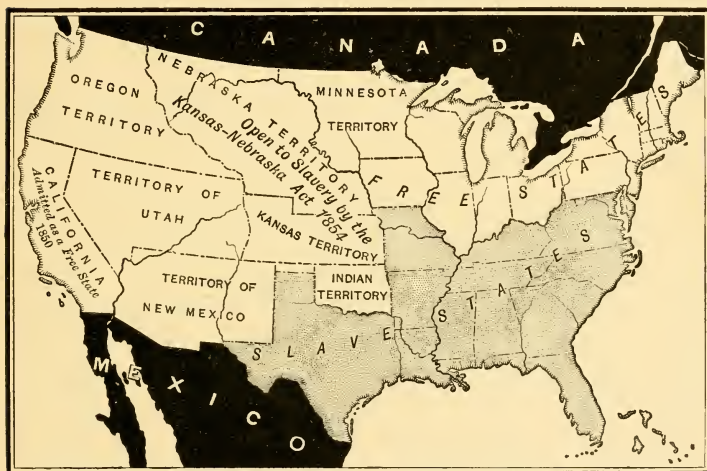
¹ Douglas (dŭg'lăss).

³ Senator (sĕn'ă-tĕr).

² He was a member of the United States Senate.

209. The emigration to Kansas from Missouri and from Massachusetts. — Senator Douglas supposed that the farmers who went into the territory of Kansas would call a meeting, or convention, and quietly vote Yes or No about having slaves.

But everything turned out differently from what he imagined. If you look on the map below, you will see



TERRITORY OPENED TO SLAVERY BY THE "KANSAS-NEBRASKA" ACT OF 1854

that Kansas territory lay directly west of the slave state of Missouri. As soon as Congress passed the law of which we have been speaking (§ 208), hundreds of slaveholders in Missouri armed themselves with rifles and revolvers and crossed the boundary line into Kansas. They at once began to lay out farms and plantations there. Then they commenced building the town of Atchison.¹

¹ Atchison (äch'ĩ-son).

They intended to make it the capital of a new slave state. Next, bands of emigrants started from Massachusetts to go to Kansas. They brought their rifles and revolvers, and began to build the town of Lawrence. They were determined that Kansas should be free and that no slave should ever do a day's work there.

210. "Bleeding Kansas." — At night you could see the flaming camp fires of these two parties, just as you might see the camp fires of two armies that were getting ready for battle.

When the Massachusetts emigrants caught sight of a Missouri man they would shout out, "Border Ruffian"¹; and when the Missouri emigrants saw a newcomer from the East they would yell, "Black Republican."²

But the two parties did not stop with calling each other nicknames. They soon began to burn each other's houses and to shoot each other at sight. In this way a kind of war broke out. Instead of settling the question of having slavery in the territory by voting upon it, both sides seem to have made up their minds to settle it by bullets.

For a long time no one's life or property was safe in that part of the country. Fighting, and nothing but fighting, was going on. So many people were killed that the new territory used to be called "Bleeding Kansas."

211. Review. — While Franklin Pierce was President, Stephen A. Douglas persuaded Congress to make the two

¹ The nickname "Border Ruffian" was given to the Missouri slaveholders because they came over the border, or boundary, from their state into Kansas territory.

² "Black Republican" was the nickname given by the southern slaveholders to all those who were friends to the negro and opposed to keeping him in slavery.

new territories of Kansas and Nebraska. They lay west and north of the state of Missouri, and Congress had promised many years before that all that country should remain free forever (§ 169).

But when Congress made these new territories, it gave the people living in them the right to say whether they would have slaves or not. Emigrants from Missouri, which was a slave state, went to Kansas, intending to make that a slave state too. Emigrants from Massachusetts went there determined to keep Kansas free. The two parties were soon at open war with each other, and Kansas became a battle ground.

JAMES BUCHANAN, FIFTEENTH PRESIDENT

(1857-1861)

212. Abraham Lincoln and Stephen A. Douglas hold a great debate about slavery (1858). — After James Buchanan¹ became our fifteenth President, Abraham Lincoln of Illinois (§ 204) and Stephen A. Douglas (§ 208) of the same state both wanted to be chosen to go to Congress.² They agreed to hold a number of public meetings in which each would try to show that he was the best man for the place.

They went about speaking to immense crowds. No building was big enough to accommodate all who wanted to hear these two great men, so they spoke in the fields.

¹ Buchanan (bŭk-an'an).

² Stephen A. Douglas was then Senator from Illinois, and he wished to be reëlected. Abraham Lincoln had been a member of the House of Representatives, but he now wished to become a Senator.

The subject about which they talked was Kansas and slavery (§§ 208-210); for everybody then was deeply interested in that question, and they all wanted to hear what Mr. Douglas and Mr. Lincoln had to say in regard to it. Not only the people in the towns but those living far back in the country came eagerly to attend these meetings. Farmers would bring their families for miles to listen to the two smartest men that there were in the state.

Senator Douglas said, Half of the states in the Union are slaveholding states. They have the same rights as the free states have. The territory of the United States belongs as much to one as to the other.¹ For myself I do not care whether Kansas comes in with slaves or without them. I say, let the people who are there decide this for themselves. That is the only way in which we shall ever get the matter finally settled.

Abraham Lincoln said, No farmer can plow a field with a pair of horses which are pulling in opposite directions. Neither can the American republic remain forever half slave states and half free states, pulling against each other. The time must come when we shall become either all free or all slave.

Slavery is a bad thing. It makes trouble where it now is, and it makes trouble wherever it goes. For this reason it is the duty of Congress to refuse to let any more slave states come into the Union.

The greater part of the people in Illinois thought at that time that Senator Douglas was a safer man to follow

¹ The Supreme Court of the United States had recently decided (1857) that Congress could not prevent slaveholders from taking their slaves into any territory.

than Abraham Lincoln. Because they thought so they sent Senator Douglas back to Congress. But Abraham Lincoln's success was coming a little later, only it was coming in a way that no one then could clearly see.

213. What John Brown tried to do (1859); three new states added. — A year after this great debate (§ 212) an



JOHN BROWN GOING TO EXECUTION

old man who had been fighting in Kansas against slavery (§ 210) resolved to go East and set the negroes free in Virginia. His name was Brown, and as he was getting gray he was commonly called "Old John Brown."

Before he went out to Kansas he had been a farmer in northern New York. He hated the new Fugitive Slave

Law (§ 205) which Daniel Webster had voted for, and so he had spent a good deal of his time in helping runaway negroes to get into Canada.

He now went to Harper's Ferry, Virginia (1859), and one night he set out with a small band of men to liberate the slaves near there. But as soon as the alarm was given, soldiers were sent to seize John Brown and his comrades. After some hard fighting they took him and six of his men and put them in prison in Charlestown, Virginia.¹ The old man was tried, found guilty of murder, and hanged.

Very few people in the North, not even among those who hated slavery most, thought that John Brown had done what was wise and right. They did not believe in trying to set the negroes free by using guns to do it. They had no intention of meddling with the southern states. What they wanted to do was simply to prevent slavery from getting possession of the new country west of the Mississippi River.

Meanwhile two more states had come into the Union. They were Minnesota and Oregon. A third state soon followed; it was Kansas, and, after all the fighting which had gone on there (§ 210), it came in free like the other two. This made the entire number of states thirty-four (1861).

214. Abraham Lincoln elected President, 1860; the state of South Carolina leaves the Union (1860). — Not quite twelve months after John Brown was executed (§ 213), Abraham Lincoln² (§ 212) was elected President of the United States. This election took place early in November,

¹ Charlestown is now in West Virginia.

² See the Life of Lincoln in Montgomery's "Beginner's American History" in this series.

1860, and President Buchanan would not go out of office until March, 1861. Those who voted for Lincoln in the North did so because they believed that he would do all he could to keep slavery confined to the states where it then was.

At the South no one voted for him, because the people there naturally wanted a President who would help slavery to grow stronger and to spread farther.

It will be remembered that when General Jackson was President, South Carolina threatened to secede,¹ or leave the Union (§ 182). As soon as it was known that Lincoln was elected, the people of that state made up their minds to secede; that is, they resolved not to stay in the Union any longer. The reason they gave for this was that they believed that the people of the North would not rest until, by some means, they had set all the slaves in the country free. They thought that President Lincoln would like that, and would work to bring it about.

This was a great mistake, for Lincoln had no intention whatever of doing anything to disturb the men at the South who owned negroes. So long as they did not try to take them into the territory west of the Mississippi River he would not lift his finger against them. He himself had said so, and every one who knew him knew that he was truthful, honest, and brave. When he said a thing he meant it.

But the people of South Carolina sent men to a convention, or meeting, at Charleston. That convention voted that South Carolina was no longer a part of the American republic, but that it was now an independent state standing

¹ Secede (sē-sēd').

entirely by itself outside of the United States. Then the people of Charleston rang the church bells and fired cannon to show their joy.

215. Ten more slave states secede, or leave the Union.

— Very soon six more southern states, namely, Georgia, Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, Louisiana, and Texas voted that they would follow the example of South Carolina. Later on, four other southern states, namely, Virginia, Arkansas, Tennessee, and North Carolina joined them, making eleven in all. There were four more slave states in the Union. These were Delaware, Maryland, Kentucky, and Missouri. They were called “border states” because they touched the borders, or boundaries, of the free states. These “border states” remained in the Union and sent a large number of men to fight for it. The eleven slave states which left the Union decided to call themselves the “Confederate States of America.” They elected Jefferson Davis (§ 195) president. They pulled down the stars and stripes and ran up a new flag which they called the “stars and bars.” It was the flag of a republic which meant to make slavery stronger than it ever had been, and meant to spread it farther and farther.

This action on the part of eleven of the southern states greatly distressed Mr. Buchanan, but he did not see what he could do to stop it. When the time came for him to leave office and for the new President to come in, he went to his home full of sorrow over the strange and sad things which he had seen happen.

216. Review. — While Mr. Buchanan was President, Abraham Lincoln and Stephen A. Douglas of Illinois held a number of public debates on Kansas and slavery.

Senator Douglas thought that the people of Kansas should have the right of deciding for themselves whether they would keep negroes as slaves.

Abraham Lincoln spoke against this and declared that Congress ought to refuse to let any more slave states into the Union. The following year John Brown, who had fought against slavery in Kansas territory, tried to set the negroes free at Harper's Ferry, Virginia. After a hard fight he was arrested, tried for murder, and hanged. The people of the North did not approve of John Brown's plan for liberating southern slaves. Most of them had no intention of meddling with slavery at the South, but they were determined to keep it from getting possession of any new territory in the West.

Three new free states were admitted to the Union. They were Minnesota, Oregon, and Kansas. This made the whole number thirty-four.

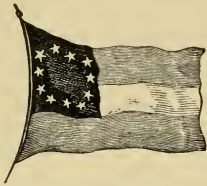
ABRAHAM LINCOLN AND ANDREW JOHNSON, SIXTEENTH AND SEVENTEENTH PRESIDENTS

(1861-1869)

217. Beginning of the great war to save the Union; battle of Fort Sumter (1861). — The people of the eleven southern states which had left the Union (§§ 214, 215) now seized all the United States forts they could get hold of. They also closed the mouth of the Mississippi River so that no vessels but their own should go out or come in.

When the Southerners seized the forts they pulled down the flag of the United States and hoisted the stars and bars (§ 215) in its place. But they had not succeeded in

getting possession of Fort Sumter, which was on an island in Charleston Harbor, South Carolina (see map below).



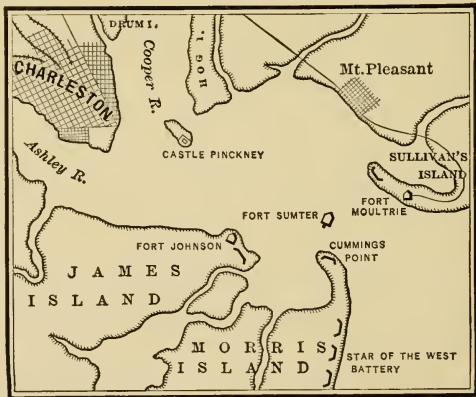
CONFEDERATE FLAG
(The Stars and Bars)

The stars and stripes were still flying there, and they were defended by Major Robert Anderson of the United States army. But Major Anderson had only a small number of men under his command, and his stock of food was running short. He knew that unless President Lincoln sent him more provisions he

would have to give up the fort to the southern people.

The President did send several vessels loaded with provisions. When Jefferson Davis (§ 215) heard of their coming, he ordered General Beauregard,¹ who commanded the

Southern, or Confederate, army, to demand the surrender of the fort. Major Anderson refused to give it up. Then the Confederates aimed their cannon at Fort Sumter and began firing. Major Anderson fired back.



MAP OF CHARLESTON HARBOR

War had now actually begun. The people of the southern states were fighting against the old flag. They were

¹ Beauregard (bō'rēh-gard').

fighting to destroy the Union. Major Anderson and his little band of men were fighting to defend and preserve it.

But Major Anderson could not hold out. He had not food enough, and he had several thousand well-fed men to fight against. He had to give up the fort (April 14, 1861).

He and his men then sailed for New York. But he carried the old flag with him. It was torn with the shot that had struck it, but it was none the less dear to those who had defended it. It was a good thing it was saved, for just four years from that day Major Anderson went



MAJOR ANDERSON LEAVING FORT SUMTER

back to Charleston and hoisted that very flag over the ruins of Fort Sumter.

218. President Lincoln calls for soldiers to put down the rebellion; the two armies; the battle of Bull Run (1861). — As soon as the terrible news reached Washington, President Lincoln called for seventy-five thousand men to defend the Union and put down the rebellion. More than double that number rushed forward to save their country.

On the other side, Jefferson Davis called for more men to fight for the South.

This was only the beginning, for the two armies kept growing larger and larger. At last there were more than a million of men in the Union ranks, and about seven hundred thousand in the ranks of the Confederates.

For four years men were fighting somewhere in the United States every day. Thousands upon thousands of them were killed on both sides. Never since America was discovered have the people of the world seen such a war as that.

In the summer of 1861 an army of Union soldiers was gathered about Washington to protect the capital of the United States against attack. On the other hand, an army of Confederate soldiers¹ gathered in northern Virginia to protect the city of Richmond, which had become the capital of the eleven Confederate states (§ 215). The two armies met on the banks of a little stream called Bull Run (see map on page 247). Here the first battle in the open field was fought. It was not at all like the battle of Fort Sumter (§ 217). That was fought with cannon fired across the waters of Charleston Harbor, and those who fired were so far apart that they could not see each other; but at Bull Run the "boys in blue" and the "boys in gray"² met face to face.

The Union army set out to capture Richmond and take Jefferson Davis prisoner. The Confederates meant to capture Washington and take President Lincoln prisoner.

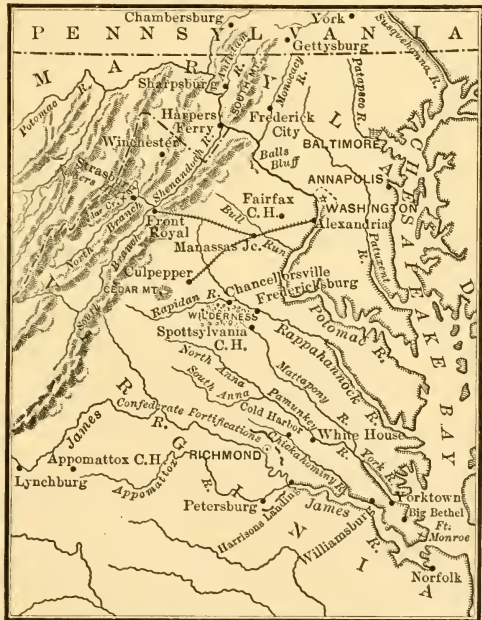
¹ General Scott had command of all the Union forces, and General Beauregard of the Confederates at the East.

² The Union soldiers wore blue uniforms, and the Confederates wore gray.

But neither side succeeded in doing what it had determined to do. The Union men were driven back across the Potomac River into the streets of the national capital; but the Confederates did not try to follow them.

Before the battle, Congress felt certain that President Lincoln's men would win a great victory. It turned out the other way. What did Congress do then? It voted to raise a larger army, to call on the people to give more money, and to push the war on harder than ever.

Bull Run taught the people of the North a good lesson. It showed them that the people of the South were in earnest about breaking up the Union, and that we must fight it out.



219. The

Union plan for carrying on the war. — Little by little the Union generals and the commanders of the vessels in the navy made a plan for carrying on the war. They meant to fight the Confederates by land and by sea.

First of all, they made ready to stretch out a line of war ships along the coast of the southern states. These war ships were to shut up, or blockade, all such ports as Norfolk, Charleston, Savannah, Mobile, New Orleans, and Galveston (see map opposite this page). By doing that, the people of the South would be prevented from sending cotton to England to sell, and they would also find it impossible to buy clothing or guns, or anything which would help them, in England.

Besides that, the Union war ships were to batter down the Confederate forts along the southern coast, and help capture the cities.

Secondly, on the land, the line of the Union army was stretched across the country from the Potomac River to the Mississippi, and beyond it as far as western Texas (see map opposite this page). One part of the Union army was to move against Richmond, Virginia, the capital of the Confederate states. Another part was to open the Mississippi River, which the South had closed (§ 217).

A third part of the Union army was to force its way down through Tennessee into Georgia, then march across the country to Savannah and Charleston on the seacoast. Then it was to turn and march northward until it met and joined the first part of the Union army at Richmond.

In helping to carry out this plan the captains of the war ships did a great piece of work. They caught hundreds of vessels which were trying to run the blockade; they destroyed Confederate war ships; they compelled forts to surrender, not only on the southern seacoast but on the southern rivers. In short, they did just as much to save the Union as the armies did which fought on land.



50 127 122 117 112 107 Longitude 102 West 9

45
40
35
30
25

REFERENCE

*Approximate limit occupied by
U.S. Troops July 1, 1861*

..... U.S. Troops July 1, 1861

— Sherman's March

— Railroads

⚓ Blockade

x Forts

	Union States
	Early Secession
	Later "

40 35 30 Longitude 25 West



MAP OF THE
UNITED STATES, 1861

SCALE OF MILES
 0 100 200 300

from 15 Washington 10 5 0



The two were like the blades of a pair of shears, one helped the other, and whatever got between them was pretty sure to be cut to pieces.

General McClellan¹ now took command of the Union army in the East and began to drill them for the next battles.

220. The fight between the *Monitor*² and the *Merrimac* (1862); the *Kearsarge*³ and the *Alabama* (1864).—After the battle of Bull Run (§ 218) the Union army and the Confederate army took a long rest.

While they were resting, and making ready to fight, a battle took place on the water. It was at the mouth of the James River, at the entrance to Chesapeake⁴ Bay, Virginia (see map on page 247). The Confederates at Norfolk had managed to get hold of a half-burnt United States war ship called the *Merrimac*. They covered the sides and top of this vessel with thick plates of iron. Then they put some large cannon on board of her. This made her into a kind of floating, ironclad fort.

When they had got this floating fort all ready they sent it out to destroy some Union war ships which were anchored near by. They were three old wooden vessels called the *Cumberland*, the *Congress*, and the *Minnesota*, and they were riding at anchor just off Fort Monroe, one of the largest and strongest forts in the United States.

As soon as the *Cumberland* and the *Congress* saw the monster coming toward them they began to fire at her. It was like a boy firing a popgun against the side of a big rock. The balls would strike the thick iron plates with a tremendous crash, but they did no damage whatever.

¹ McClellan (mak-klĕl'an).

³ Kearsarge (kēr'särj).

² Monitor (mōn'ī-tēr).

⁴ Chesapeake (chēs'ā-pĕk).

The *Merrimac* never turned aside an inch; but she put on all steam and dashed into the *Cumberland*. That unfortunate vessel was sent to the bottom, and many sick and wounded Union men went to the bottom in her.¹

Then the *Merrimac* turned and attacked the *Congress*, captured her, set her on fire, and left her to burn up. Having done that, the captain of the *Merrimac* thought he had worked mischief enough for one day, so he went back to Norfolk (see map on page 247).

Early the next morning he started out to finish up his job by destroying the *Minnesota*.

But this time the *Merrimac* was not going to have everything her own way, as she did before. A queer-looking little vessel, flying the stars and stripes, came out to meet her. It was a new Union war ship, made entirely of iron. It was called the *Monitor*,² and it had come from New York.

The *Merrimac* had been fighting poor wooden vessels, that could do nothing to defend themselves against her. Now she must fight something that was as hard and tough as she was herself. It was iron against iron. No battle like this had ever been seen before in the world. It ended by the Confederate captain turning round and hurrying back to Norfolk. He had not dared touch the *Minnesota*, which he had expected to destroy.

The *Merrimac* had now done all the damage she ever would do. She never had another game of ball with the little *Monitor*. Some weeks after that, the Confederates were obliged to give up Norfolk to the Union army.

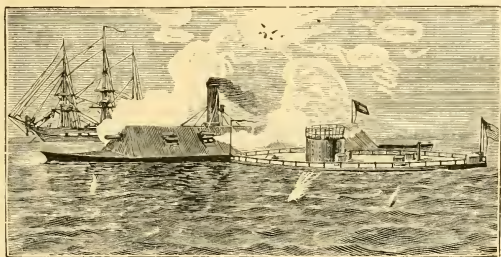
¹ See Longfellow's poem on the sinking of the *Cumberland*.

² The *Monitor* was invented by Captain John Ericsson.

When they did, the crew of the *Merrimac* set fire to her and burned her up.

From that time on, the United States built many iron ships of war and many iron-plated gunboats. They did great service during the war, — most of all on the rivers in the southwest.

On the other hand, the Confederates built several war ships in Europe and sent them out to destroy the merchant vessels of the United States. The *Alabama* was the



THE *Monitor* AND THE *Merrimac*

most noted of these ships, and she robbed and burned a great many northern vessels. The captain of the *Kearsarge*¹ went out in search of her; he found her near the coast of France, and soon sent her to the bottom of the sea.

221. Fighting at the West; what General Grant did. — You remember that there was a young man who took part in the Mexican War whose name was Ulysses S. Grant (§ 195). Well, some years after that war was over, he went to the state of Missouri and tried his hand at farming. But he did not get on very well. Then he undertook to do something else, but he did not succeed

¹ The *Kearsarge* (kēr'sārj) was a Union sloop of war.

any better at that. Finally, he went into his father's leather store at Galena,¹ Illinois, to see if he could get a living as a clerk selling leather.

When the great war for the Union broke out, Ulysses S. Grant left his father's leather store. He raised a company of men to fight for the old flag which he had fought under in Mexico. After a time he got command of a large number of Union soldiers and was called General Grant.

If you look on the map on page 253 you will see a town named Cairo² at the southern end of Illinois. It stands just at the point where the Ohio River flows into the Mississippi. In the winter of 1861 General Grant had his army there.

By the spring of 1862 he and Commodore Foote, of the United States navy, began to move toward the South. The Confederate army had been trying very hard to get possession of the "border state" of Kentucky (§ 215), but they had been beaten and had given up the game.

With the help of Commodore Foote, General Grant pushed his way south along the Tennessee and the Cumberland rivers (see map on page 253). He fought three hard battles. In one of them he captured Fort Henry; in the next he took Fort Donelson³ (both of which you will see on the map); last of all, he fought and won a terrible battle at Shiloh,⁴ or Pittsburg Landing. In this way he drove the Confederate soldiers out of the state of Tennessee. In this way, too, he got a new name, for, instead of calling him Ulysses S. Grant, everybody on the Union side now began to call him "Unconditional Surrender"

¹ Galena (gā-lē'na).

² Cairo (kā'r'ō).

³ Donelson (dōn'el-sōn).

⁴ Shiloh (shī'lō).

Grant. That was because when he said that the Confederate general at Fort Donelson must surrender, he told him that he must give up everything at once and say nothing more about it ; he did just what Grant told him.

At the same time that General Grant gained these three victories, the Union soldiers opened the Mississippi River from Kentucky as far south as Vicksburg (see map



on page 261). These victories by General Grant ended the first year of the war.

222. Review.—The first year of the war began by the Confederates taking Fort Sumter in Charleston Harbor. President Lincoln then called for seventy-five thousand men to save the Union and to put down the rebellion. In the first great battle, fought at Bull Run, Virginia, the Union men were beaten. Congress then voted to raise a large army, and it also voted more money to fight with.

The Union commanders began to make a plan for carrying on the war. They blockaded the southern coast; and they made ready to send armies to take Richmond, the Confederate capital, to open the Mississippi River, and, last of all, to march through the states of Tennessee and Georgia, and then up toward the north. In the spring of 1862 the Union war ship *Monitor* drove back the Confederate war ship *Merrimac*. This was the first battle fought on the water.

In the West, General Grant took two Confederate forts in Tennessee, besides fighting and gaining the great battle of Pittsburg Landing. In this way he got possession of the state of Tennessee, and the Union forces opened the Mississippi River from Kentucky as far south as Vicksburg.

SECOND YEAR OF THE WAR FOR THE UNION
(APRIL, 1862—APRIL, 1863)

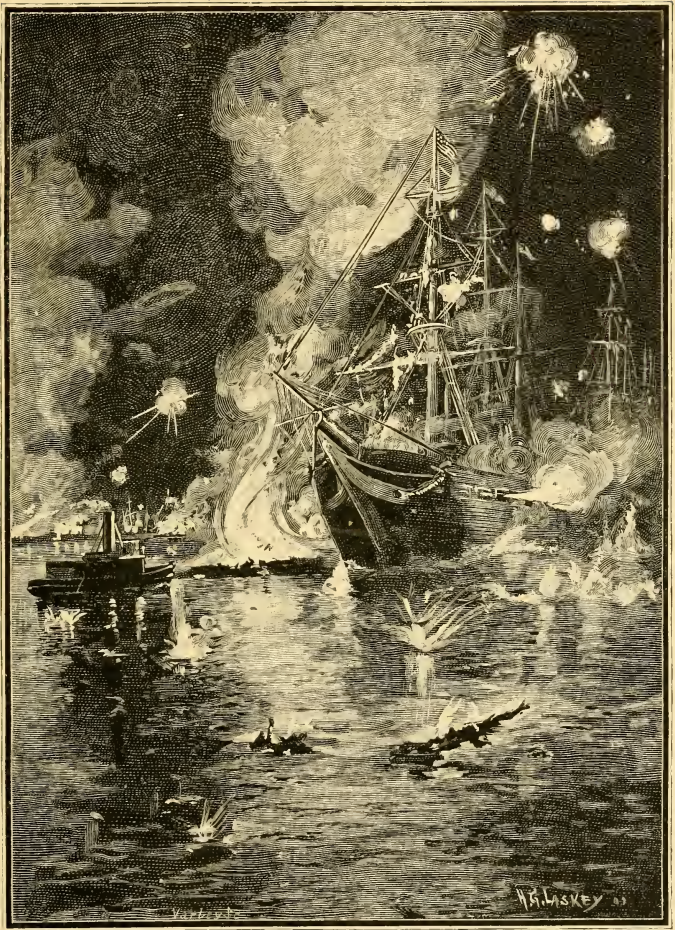
223. What Captain Farragut¹ did at New Orleans (1862). — At the beginning of the war the Confederates, at New Orleans,² had taken possession of two forts below the city on opposite sides of the Mississippi River.

Above these two forts they anchored a number of vessels armed with heavy cannon. Next, just below the forts, they stretched two big chains across the river (see map opposite page 305). Having done these three things they felt safe.

They said, Now let Lincoln send all the ships of war and all the men he pleases; we are ready for them. Before they can strike a blow at New Orleans they have

¹ Farragut (fār'ā-güt).

² New Orleans (ôr'lē-ānz).



FARRAGUT ON HIS WAY TO NEW ORLEANS

got to cut their way through two heavy chain cables. Then, if they succeed in doing that, they must pass between the guns of our two forts, which will fire at them from opposite sides of the river. Last of all, if any of them come through that fire alive, they must meet and fight our war ships above the forts.

In the spring of the second year of the war (1862) Captain Farragut started with a large fleet of Union war ships to go up the Mississippi and take New Orleans.

First, he put on all steam and rammed his way through the two heavy chains. Next, he fought his way past the two forts. Finally, he knocked the Confederate fleet to pieces with his big guns. Then he sailed up to the city of New Orleans, and sent a lot of soldiers on shore to take possession of the place. They quickly hauled down the "stars and bars" (§ 215), and then, with loud cheers, ran up the stars and stripes. That finished that piece of work.

But above New Orleans there were several Confederate forts still to be taken; the last of these would be Vicksburg, which would be more difficult to conquer than all the rest. Captain Farragut could not take these places unless he had an army on land to help him, so nothing more was done on the Mississippi that year. Later on, Captain Farragut was made an admiral¹—that is the highest position in the United States navy.

224. Fighting at the East; McClellan tries to take Richmond; Lee tries to get into Pennsylvania (1862).— Not long after the Union men had taken New Orleans (§ 223) Jefferson Davis (§ 215) put Colonel Robert E. Lee, who

¹ Admiral (ăd'mī-ral).

had been in the Mexican war (§ 195), in command of the Confederate army around Richmond.

Lee's father had been a large slaveholder in Virginia. When he died he gave his slaves to his son, but the young man did not think slavery was a good thing, so he set all of his negroes free. But when the great war broke out and the state of Virginia voted to secede from the Union (§ 215), Colonel Lee said, "I shall go with my state." He loved the Union, but he loved Virginia better. He hated slavery, but he drew his sword to fight for it. He became a general in the Confederate army.

General McClellan (§ 219) had now got his army into fine condition, and he set out to fight General Lee and to take Richmond. A number of hard battles took place, and the Union men got so near to the Confederate capital that they could see the church steeples in the city; but they could not take it (see map on page 247).

Then General Lee set out to go north and see if he could not capture Harrisburg, the capital of Pennsylvania. He crossed the Potomac River into Maryland, but McClellan met him there and drove him back with terrible loss.¹

Both sides had failed to do what they had undertaken. The "boys in blue" did not get into Richmond, and "the boys in gray" did not get into the capital of Pennsylvania.

225. President Lincoln sets the slaves free, 1863.— Ever since the war began, the southern people had got great help from their negroes. The slaves raised the corn and pork which fed the Confederate armies. The slaves, too, had to work with pickaxes and shovels to build Confederate forts.

¹ This was at the battle of Antietam (ăn-tē'tam).

President Lincoln thought that this had gone on long enough. He said, In all our fighting we have not tried to strike slavery, yet slavery was what brought on the war. He now determined not to wait any longer, but to hit slavery the hardest blow he could.

On New Year's Day, 1863, the President said, I now set free forever all slaves in the states which are making war against the Union.



COLONEL SHAW'S NEGRO REGIMENT

From that day on, as fast as the Union armies moved forward, so fast the negroes in the South got their liberty. In the end, President Lincoln made every slave in the United States a free man. That meant, of course, that every black man could now keep all that he earned. It also meant that he must make his own way without help, and learn to take care of himself.

In time many thousands of these "freedmen,"¹ as they were called, entered the Union army. A part of them fought on the battlefield. They fought as bravely as any white men did, and those who fell died for the flag which flies over us to-day.

226. Review.—In the second year of the war the Union men under Captain Farragut took the city of New Orleans and so opened the mouth of the Mississippi River. Some time afterward Captain Farragut was made an admiral. At the East General McClellan set out to take Richmond but did not succeed. On the other hand, General Lee set out to take the capital of Pennsylvania, but he was beaten by General McClellan in a great battle, and he had to go back into Virginia.

On New Year's Day, 1863, President Lincoln set the slaves free. Many of them now entered the Union army and helped the "boys in blue" fight their battles for the old flag.

THIRD YEAR OF THE WAR (APRIL, 1863—APRIL, 1864)

227. The great battle of Gettysburg (1863).—But although General Lee had been beaten and driven back when he tried to enter Pennsylvania (§ 224), he did not give up but resolved to try again. The next summer (1863) he set out once more to see if he could not capture Harrisburg and perhaps Philadelphia.

General Meade, with a large Union army, met Lee at Gettysburg in Pennsylvania, just across the line from Maryland (see map on page 247).

¹"Freedmen": this was the name given to all the freed slaves.

Here a battle was fought which lasted three days. Both sides lost an immense number of men, — more than forty thousand in all.

On the last day the Confederates were utterly defeated, and Lee, with what soldiers he had left, hurried back to Virginia. He never tried to enter Pennsylvania again.



BATTLE OF GETTYSBURG

The next autumn, part of the great battlefield of Gettysburg was set apart as a burial ground for the Union soldiers who fell there. President Lincoln was present and spoke words which will never be forgotten.¹ The entire ground is now covered with beautiful marble and granite monuments. Outside of our country nothing like it can be seen anywhere in the world.

¹ See a part of his Address at Gettysburg in Montgomery's "Leading Facts of American History," in this series.

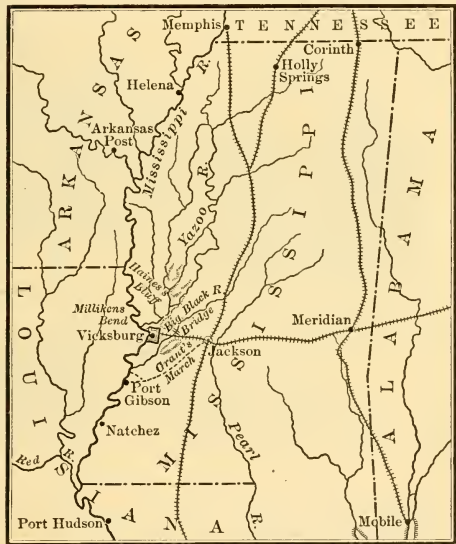
228. General "Unconditional Surrender"¹ Grant takes Vicksburg (1863). — While the guns were thundering at Gettysburg (§ 227) General Grant was fighting a great battle at Vicksburg (§ 223), more than a thousand miles away (see map below).

He had been trying to take the Confederate city for weeks. But, standing as it did on a bluff two hundred feet above the Mississippi River, it was a hard place to get at.

Day and night he kept hammering away at it with his big guns. Many of the houses in the town were banged to pieces. No one dared to stay in them. The women and children suffered terribly; they had to

live in holes or caves dug out of the sides of the clay hills.

The Confederate soldiers dug long trenches, or ditches, for themselves, so that Grant's cannon balls would not hit them. But worst of all, everybody in the place was getting short of food. At best they could only find a few mouthfuls a day to eat.



¹ See § 221, page 252.

At last, on the Fourth of July (1863) the Confederates had to give up Vicksburg, and General Grant and his Union army entered the town.

The battles of Gettysburg and Vicksburg were two of the greatest victories "the boys in blue" gained during the war.



GENERAL GRANT HAMMERING AWAY AT VICKSBURG

A few days later the last southern fort on the Mississippi surrendered.¹ The great river of the West, the "Father of Waters," was now free and wide open.

229. What the Union army and navy had done; a day of thanksgiving appointed; General Grant put in command of all the Union armies. — Two parts of the Union plan for carrying on the war (§ 219) had now been successfully carried out. In the first place the war ships had blockaded,

¹ This was at Port Hudson, south of Vicksburg.

or shut up, all of the southern seaports. The Confederates could very seldom get a chance to send any cotton abroad from them, and they found it harder and harder to get any clothing, guns, or powder which might be sent to them from Europe.

In the second place the armies of the United States had cleared the Mississippi of every Confederate fort, so that Union men could go up and down its entire length, and there was no one to stop them.

When the great news came of the victory at Gettysburg, and the next day of the victory at Vicksburg, President Lincoln appointed a day of thanksgiving and prayer. The Union men everywhere met and gave thanks to God that our country's flag was triumphant.

Later, there was more hard fighting at the West, and the Union soldiers got possession of Chattanooga,¹ Tennessee (see map on page 253). In the spring (1864) President Lincoln put General Grant in command of all the armies of the United States.

230. Review. — In the third year of the war Lee was beaten in the terrible battle of Gettysburg. He never tried to enter Pennsylvania again.

General Grant took Vicksburg and opened the Mississippi River. Not very long afterward President Lincoln put him in command of all the Union armies in the United States.

¹ Chattanooga (chăt'tā-nōō'gā).

FOURTH AND LAST YEAR OF THE WAR (APRIL, 1864-
APRIL, 1865)

231. General Grant and General Sherman plan the last battles of the war (1864).— Before General Grant left Chattanooga to go East (§ 229), he had a long talk with General Sherman, who was his right-hand man. He told that general that he was going to Washington to march against Lee and hammer him until he made him give up Richmond. While he was doing that piece of work at the East he wanted General Sherman to push his way down into Georgia and take Atlanta.¹

General Grant's plan was to move against Lee from the north, and have Sherman move against him from the south at the same time, just as you have seen the two parts of a vise move toward each other. Put your finger in the vise, then turn the handle, and you will understand how General Grant hoped to catch Lee and hold him fast (see map opposite page 248).

232. General Grant moves against Lee; the battles in the Wilderness (1864).— General Grant went East to carry out his plan (§ 231). He was the sixth general who had set out to take Richmond. Five who had tried it had failed.² Now the question was whether General Grant would have to give it up as all the rest had.

He started from the Rapidan River³ in northern Virginia in May, 1864 (see map on page 265). He wanted to go directly across what was called the Wilderness.

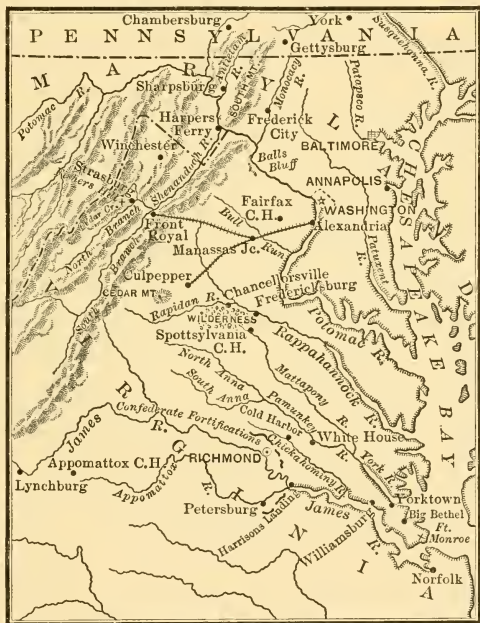
¹ Atlanta (ăt-lăn'ta).

² McDowell, McClellan, Pope, Burnside, and Hooker were the five generals who had tried it and failed.

³ Rapidan (răp'id-ăn').

That was a wild, rough piece of country covered with small trees and a great tangle of bushes and vines. There were no good roads through the Wilderness, and it was difficult work for the Union men to move forward.

The fighting in the Wilderness was something awful. It was a good deal like fighting in the dark. At last, however, by turning and twisting, General Grant managed to get on. But he found that it was no use trying to move in a straight line to Richmond. So he changed his course somewhat, and got to Petersburg, which is not very far from Richmond (see map above).



There he had to stop, and it began to seem doubtful whether he would get any farther.

233. What Sherman did in the West (1864).— On the very day that General Grant set out to cross the Wilderness for Richmond (§ 232), General Sherman moved forward as he had promised to do (§ 231). He left

Chattanooga, Tennessee, and began fighting his way toward Atlanta, Georgia (see map on page 267).

The Confederate army in that part of the country tried their best to stop him. They would keep moving away from him, and at the same time they would tear up the railway tracks and the bridges behind them. They hoped that by doing that they could starve Sherman's army, because all the food for his men had to be carried in trains running over those tracks and bridges. But the Union men laid the railway tracks again and rebuilt the bridges. They did this so quickly that they gave the Confederates no chance to rest. Almost before they knew it "the boys in blue" would be chasing them again.

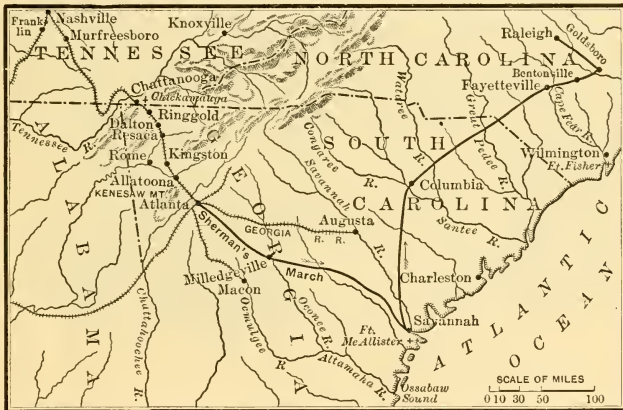
234. General Sherman takes Atlanta and marches to the sea (1864).— After fighting a number of hard battles, General Sherman's army entered Atlanta, Georgia (see map on page 267). It was a very busy city. Several lines of railway came in there, and the Confederates had large cotton mills, workshops, and iron foundries there. In these they made clothes for the southern soldiers, besides cannon and other things used in the war.

The Union men burned every mill, factory, foundry, and machine shop in the place. That was done in order that the Confederates should not be able to make anything more there which they could use in fighting against the Union.

When the fire had done its work and the city was full of smoking piles of ruins General Sherman set out on another march. It was the greatest march of the war, for he was going from Atlanta through Georgia to the seacoast.

He had sixty thousand men. They went across the country eating up everything they could lay hands on. By Christmas time (1864) General Sherman had reached and captured the city of Savannah;¹ he was in sight of the Atlantic (see map below). The jaws of the great vise (§ 231) were slowly moving together, and the Confederate armies were between those jaws.

235. General Sherman marches toward the North and meets General Grant (1865).—Next, General Sherman



MAP OF SHERMAN'S MARCH

started to move northward toward Richmond (see map above). For weeks his army pushed on through floods of rain. They waded through mud knee-deep, and through swamps and streams deeper still. They had to cut down trees and build miles and miles of roads made of logs.

At last the Union army reached North Carolina. There General Sherman left them to rest for a short time

¹ Savannah (sā-văn'ā).

while he went to see General Grant who was still near Petersburg, Virginia (§ 232).

236. General Grant takes Richmond; the end of the great war (1865); new states. — About a week from the time when General Grant and General Sherman met



SURRENDER OF GENERAL LEE

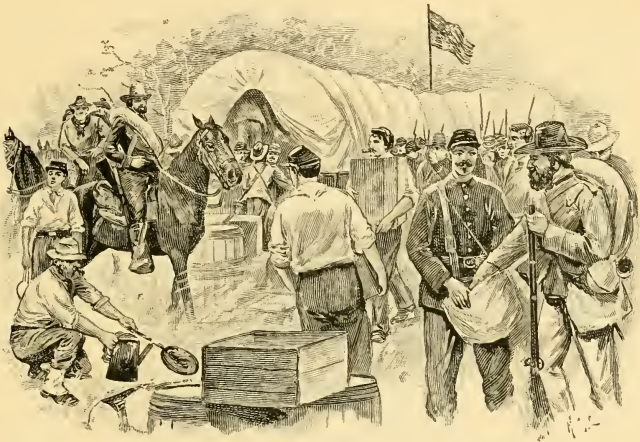
(§ 235), Lee's army left Richmond. The Union army, led by General Grant, entered the Confederate capital and he hoisted the stars and stripes over the city.

A few days later, General Lee surrendered his half-starved army to General Grant.¹ The "boys in gray" had eaten nothing but some pounded corn; they were faint with hunger, and the "boys in blue" were glad to

¹ The surrender was made at Appomattox (ăp'pō-măt'tōks), Virginia, not very far from Richmond (see map on page 265).

sit down on the grass and share their bread with them. General Johnston, who had been fighting against General Sherman, surrendered about two weeks later.

At last the terrible war was over. It had been going on for four years. It had cost the people of the North more than a thousand dollars a minute for the whole



THE "BOYS IN BLUE" SHARING THEIR RATIONS WITH THE
"BOYS IN GRAY"

four years.¹ It had cost the people of the South every dollar they had in the world. The South was full of ruins; mills, bridges, and railways had been destroyed; the slaves had followed the Union armies; the plantations were deserted; the cattle had been killed off; in many cases nothing was left but the bare land.

¹ The total cost of the war to the United States was \$2,085,000,000. This would be, on the average, a good deal more than one thousand dollars a minute for the entire four years.

But that was not all; that was not the worst, for half a million of the young men of the country, of the North and of the South, lay dead. Many of them slept in graves dug on a hundred hard-fought battlefields.

Was such a war worth such terrible cost? Yes, for it saved the Union; it destroyed slavery; it made it possible for the men of the North and the men of the South to feel that in all time to come they would stand by each other as friends and brothers.

While the war was going on, two new states were admitted to the Union. They were West Virginia and Nevada. This made the whole number thirty-six.

237. Review.—In the fourth and last year of the war General Grant moved against Richmond from the north, while General Sherman in the west moved from Chattanooga, Tennessee, against Atlanta, Georgia.

General Grant fought a number of battles in the Wilderness, and finally moved around to Petersburg, not very far from Richmond.

General Sherman fought his way to Atlanta, and then marched to Savannah. From there he went to North Carolina. Soon after this, Lee left Richmond, and a few days later he surrendered to Grant. This ended the war.

238. Major Anderson hoists the old flag over Fort Sumter; President Lincoln murdered; Andrew Johnson becomes President (1865).—You remember how bravely Major Anderson defended Fort Sumter at the beginning of the war (§ 217). That fort was now given back to the United States. On April 14, 1865, Major Anderson raised the very same flag over it which he had fought under just four years before.



GRAND REVIEW OF THE UNION ARMIES AT WASHINGTON, 1865

That day, so full of joy for every lover of his country, was followed by an evening filled with sorrow. On that evening a half-crazed actor of the name of Booth shot President Lincoln in a theater in Washington. By his death Vice President Andrew Johnson then became President of the United States.

239. Congress and the new President ; what Congress did about the southern states and the freed negroes. — The new President did not get on well with Congress. Finally a number of members of Congress resolved to bring the President to trial and to remove him from office. But when the trial took place, those who disliked Mr. Johnson did not succeed in removing him, although they came very near it.

Congress now told the eleven southern states which had fought against the Union (§§ 214, 215) that they might elect members to Congress. But in order to do so they had to promise two things. First, they must give their word that all the negroes that had been set free (§ 225) should stay free. Secondly, they must give their word that the freed negroes should be protected by the same laws by which white men were protected. That meant that the black man was now to have the same rights, in most ways, that the white men had.

Seven of the eleven states agreed to do this. They came back into the Union and elected members to Congress. The other four states refused to make these two promises ; but later they agreed to do so. They then came back into the Union. Within five years after the war had ended, all of the eleven states were back in the Union and had elected members to Congress.



RELIEF MAP OF THE UNITED STATES (AND PART OF BRITISH AMERICA)
(Showing the First Pacific Railway)

By that time another great change had taken place, for the United States had given the negroes the right to vote.¹

This completed the work, for now the negroes at the South, who had once been slaves, had all the rights which any white man had.

In some of the southern states, such as South Carolina, there were more black men than white. When the negroes got the right to vote they tried at first to have everything their own way. They succeeded for a time, and so made a great deal of trouble.

240. The United States buys another large piece of land (1867); a new state added. — We have seen how the United States got possession of six pieces of land. Some of these we bought, some were given to us. The first was the great Louisiana Country (1803); the second was the territory of Florida (1819); the third was Texas (1845); the fourth was the Oregon Country (1846); the fifth was California and the other territory which we got from Mexico (1848); the sixth was the piece of land we bought from Mexico which was called the "Gadsden Purchase" (1853).²

Now we added a seventh piece of land; for, a few years after the war was over, we bought the territory of Alaska³ from Russia (see map on page 275). We paid \$7,200,000 for it. A good many of our people cried out that we had wasted our money. They said that Alaska produced nothing but ice and bears, and that we had enough of both without buying any more.

¹ These rights were given to the negroes by three amendments which were made to the Constitution of the United States.

² See the maps showing these additions, beginning with Louisiana, on pages 168, 185, 211, 215, 218, 219.

³ Alaska (ă-lās'ka).

But we have since obtained so much gold and so many seal skins and salmon from Alaska that everybody now thinks we got a great bargain. In fact, Alaska has paid all it cost us, many times over.

The same year (1867) in which we bought that far northern territory we added the state of Nebraska to the Union. This made the whole number of states thirty-seven.

241. Review. — Just after the war for the Union was ended, President Lincoln was murdered and Vice President Johnson became President.

President Johnson did not get on well with Congress, and an attempt was made to remove him from office, but it did not succeed.

A few years after this, the southern states were allowed to send members to Congress, just as they had done before the war. The freed negroes now received all the rights of white men, one of which was the right to vote.

In 1867 we bought the territory of Alaska from Russia. It made the seventh great piece of land which the United States had obtained. That same year Nebraska was admitted to the Union, making thirty-seven states in all.

ULYSSES S. GRANT, EIGHTEENTH PRESIDENT

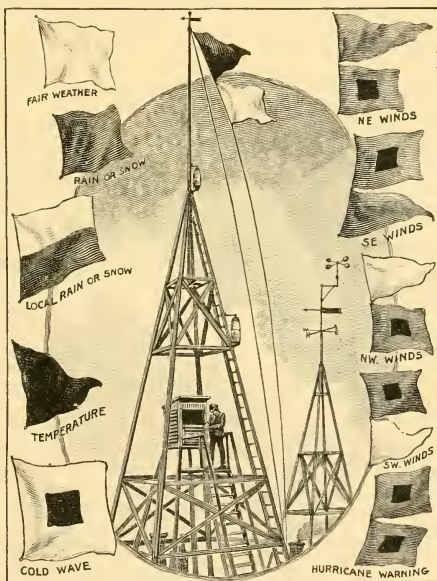
(1869-1877)

242. Opening of the first railway to the Pacific (1869); western farms. — We have already spoken of the opening of the first great line of railway across the continent to the Pacific (§ 202). This railway was completed about two months after General Grant became our eighteenth President.

When people from the eastern states first began to go across the country to California it took them several months to get there. One man drove an ox team from Maine to the Pacific coast. He was a year on the road. He said that before he got there he began to think that there was no end to the United States.

But after the Pacific Railway was finished, passengers could go from Maine to San Francisco in a week. In this way steam made it very easy for emigrants to get to the far West. Congress gave them farms,¹ so land cost them nothing. To-day that part of our country between the Mississippi River and the Pacific Ocean has many railways running through it in different directions. See map on page 278. Great numbers of settlers have gone there and made themselves homes.

There are farms there which can show the largest cornfields and wheat fields and the largest herds of cattle and flocks of sheep that can be seen anywhere in the world.



UNITED STATES WEATHER BUREAU

¹ This was under the Homestead Act of 1862.

243. What the United States has to say about the weather. — Those who cultivate the soil and those who send vessels to sea always want to find out all they can about the weather. Will it rain? Will it storm? are questions they are asking every day.

The year after the first Pacific railway was opened (§ 242) Congress hired a number of men to spend their time in trying to answer these questions.¹

These answers are published in the papers every morning. We know before we eat our breakfasts what kind



RAILWAYS OF THE UNITED STATES

(Showing the Five Pacific Railways)

of weather the day will probably bring us. That information is worth more money than we ever saw, because it helps the farmers and the shipowners and many other

¹ The United States Weather Bureau was established in 1870.

people to decide about their work. It tells them whether they had better cut their grain or their wheat, or whether they had better send their vessels to sea or hold them in port.

244. The great Exhibition at Philadelphia in 1876; admission of Colorado. — In 1876 the United States kept its hundredth birthday, because just a hundred years had passed since we declared ourselves independent (§ 123).

There was a great exhibition opened at Philadelphia. The main object of it was to show what wonderful machines we had invented, and how much we had gained in every way in the course of a century.

In 1776, when Thomas Jefferson wrote the Declaration of Independence, Philadelphia was only a little city, and the whole country west of Pennsylvania was a wilderness where tribes of Indians hunted wild beasts. There were only thirteen states in the Union. If you look on the map on page 93, you will see that they were stretched out in a thin line along the shore of the Atlantic Ocean.

Now look on the map on page 275 and you will see how big we had grown to be in our first hundred years. Philadelphia had become a great city. We had added twenty-five more states (see page 280) and had reached out until we had got to the Mississippi, then to the Rocky Mountains, and then to the Pacific.

That showed how the United States had spread until it extended clear across the North American continent from one ocean to the other.

Then, when it came to inventions, we found that a century of time had made changes equally great. For the men who signed the Declaration of Independence at

Philadelphia (§ 123) had never seen a steam engine, a steamboat, a train of cars, a telegraph line, an electric light, a photograph, a revolver, a typewriter, or a daily paper. They had never seen a mowing machine, a bicycle, or a sewing machine. More than that, they had not even seen such common things as a cook stove, a kerosene lamp, a postage stamp, or a box of matches.

For all these useful and valuable inventions, and hundreds more besides, had come into use since these men at Philadelphia laid down the pen with which they put their names to that famous declaration.

The same year in which the United States kept its hundredth birthday, the new state of Colorado was admitted to the Union. It made the whole number of states thirty-eight.

245. Review. — While General Grant was President, the first Pacific railway was opened across the continent to California. It greatly helped to fill the far West with new settlers.

Two years later the United States established a weather bureau, or office to foretell the weather, day by day, for the whole country. It has been of immense service to a very large number of people — especially to farmers and shipowners.

In 1876 the United States kept its hundredth birthday, and a great exhibition was opened at Philadelphia to show how rapidly we had grown and how much we had gained in all ways.

In the same year Colorado was admitted to the Union as the thirty-eighth state.

RUTHERFORD B. HAYES, NINETEENTH PRESIDENT
(1877-1881)

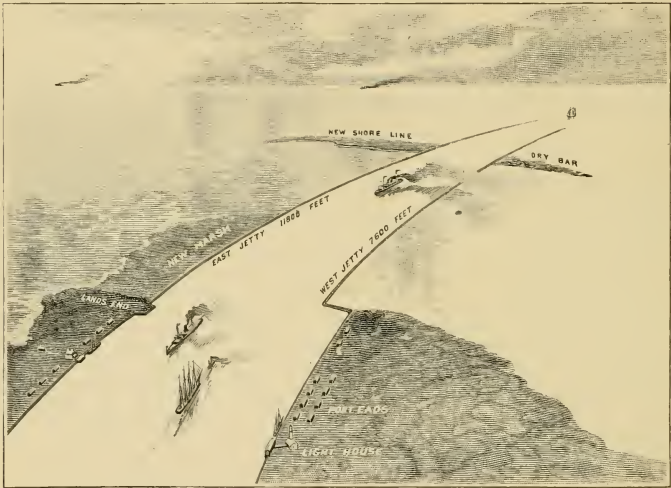
246. President Hayes calls away all Union soldiers from the southern states. — Up to this time a certain number of Union soldiers had been kept in the southern states. This was done to protect the freed negroes (§ 225) and to prevent any trouble between them and the white people. But President Hayes thought that the people of the South, both white and black, could now live together peaceably. For this reason he withdrew all the Union soldiers from that part of the country. Everything went on quietly after that, as the President believed it would, and the soldiers were never sent back.

247. How one of the mouths of the Mississippi was made deeper. — The Mississippi River has a very rapid current. Every year the water brings down an immense quantity of yellow mud. Below the city of New Orleans this mud used to settle to the bottom and so block up the three mouths of the river.

Large vessels and steamers, which had taken loads of cotton at New Orleans to carry to Europe, often found it very difficult to get out to sea. They would stick fast in the mud.

In the same way vessels bringing goods from Europe would stick fast in trying to come up the river to New Orleans. The state of Louisiana and the United States had both spent a great deal of money in digging out the mouths of the Mississippi. But they soon filled up again, so not much good was done. Many said that the case was hopeless.

Captain Eads¹ of St. Louis believed that he could find a way of doing what was needed. He did not try to dig out the mud, but he went to work and made some new banks² on each side the river just above its largest mouth. These banks made the stream narrower, and so forced the water to run a good deal faster than it did before.



WHAT CAPTAIN EADS DID FOR THE MISSISSIPPI

The rapid current carried the mud much farther out to sea and thus deepened the river. Because of this change large vessels can now go out and come in without trouble.

Captain Eads spent four years in doing this work. He not only helped the city of New Orleans by it, but he helped all the people living on the great river who want to trade with other countries.

¹ James Buchanan Eads (eedz). ² Captain Eads made these banks of timber and wickerwork, and filled them in with sand.

248. Review.— President Hayes called away the Union soldiers that had been kept at the South to protect the negroes. He believed that they were no longer needed there, and that the white people and the negroes would live peaceably together. He was right in thinking so, and the soldiers were never sent back to that part of the country.

While he was President, Captain Eads contrived a way for making the Mississippi River clear out the mud from its largest mouth. This was a great help, because all vessels could now enter or leave the Mississippi without trouble. This was an immense advantage to the city of New Orleans.

JAMES A. GARFIELD AND CHESTER A. ARTHUR,
TWENTIETH AND TWENTY-FIRST PRESI-
DENTS (1881-1885)

249. President Garfield murdered.— Mr. Garfield had been President only a short time when he was shot. He died about two months later. The man who shot the President had been begging him to give him some kind of place where he could get good pay without doing much of any work. He seemed to think that it was part of the President's business to find or make such a place for him. Because Mr. Garfield did not do it he killed him. Vice President Arthur then became our twenty-first President.

250. Congress makes a new law about having men work for the United States (1883).— The United States employs a great number of people to do various things. It keeps thousands of clerks in Washington. Some of them are busy all day counting the money which comes

in from taxes. Others are busy writing down how much the government pays out. Again, a great number are employed in the post office, looking after the mails which carry letters to all parts of the country.

Still again there are many clerks whose duty it is to look after the war ships and the soldiers of the United States. They see that they have provisions sent to them, and powder, guns, and clothing when they need them.

These are a few of the ways in which an army of people are employed by the United States.

After President Garfield was killed, Congress made a new law¹ about hiring men to work for the government. The object of it was to prevent people from continually begging the President to give them some office as a favor. The new law declares that those who want places must pass an examination to show that they are able to do the work. If they get through that examination their names are put on a list, and then they may obtain employment. The intention of the law is to treat all persons alike, and so give one man as good a chance to get something to do as any one else can have.

251. How the South began to grow. — The white people in the southern states had a hard time of it for a long while after the war was over. That part of the country had been left very poor. The war, as we have seen (§ 236), destroyed a great deal of all kinds of property, not only mills and factories but even the railways. Now, too, that the negroes were free they could no longer be compelled to work, and many of them were lazy and would do nothing if they could possibly help it.

¹ The Civil Service Reform Law.

But after a while the white people took heart and began to build everything up again. They hired the negroes to plant and pick cotton, and before many years had passed they raised more than they ever had by slave labor.

Then the people said to themselves, Why should not we make cotton cloth ourselves, instead of getting it all made at the North? They built factories and began to make their own cloth. More than that, they dug into the hillsides and opened iron mines and built foundries and iron mills.

From that time the South has been growing richer. The people there see now that they are better off in many ways than they were before the war.

252. Review. — The murder of President Garfield made Vice President Arthur President.

Congress passed a law to prevent men from begging places and employment from the President. That law compels those who are trying to get government work to pass an examination first. This gives one person as good a chance to get employment as another.

While Chester A. Arthur was President, the South began to plant a great deal more cotton, to build factories, and to open iron mines. The people there are now better off than they were before the war.

GROVER CLEVELAND, TWENTY-SECOND PRESIDENT (1885-1889)

253. The statue of Liberty in New York Harbor. — The year after Mr. Cleveland became our twenty-second President a statue of Liberty was set up on an island in the harbor of New York City. It is the largest piece of work

of the kind that was ever made. It is higher than most church steeples.

This grand statue was given by people in France. They remembered what close friends Washington and Lafayette had been in the days of the American Revolution (§ 126). They wanted to show their feeling of good will to our country, and they did it by this gift.

The figure of Liberty represents America — the home of liberty. One hand holds up a torch to give light to the world. At night the great torch is lighted by electricity. It can be seen for many miles. It serves as a guide to vessels coming up the harbor from countries beyond the sea.

254. Congress makes two very important laws (1886, 1887). — We have seen that four of our Presidents died¹ not long after they entered office and that the Vice Presidents then took their places. In this way everything went on quietly without making any trouble.

But after the murder of President Garfield (§ 249) people began to ask, What would happen if the President and Vice President should both die at about the same time? Who would then become President? That was a new question, and no one could answer it.

For this reason Congress now made a law (1886) to meet that question. That law² tells us what shall be done in case both the President and the Vice President die or are removed from office. It declares that if such a thing should happen, then one of seven members of the

¹ They were William Henry Harrison (§ 189), Zachary Taylor (§ 206), Abraham Lincoln in his second term of office (§ 238), and James A. Garfield (§ 249).

² The Presidential Succession Act.

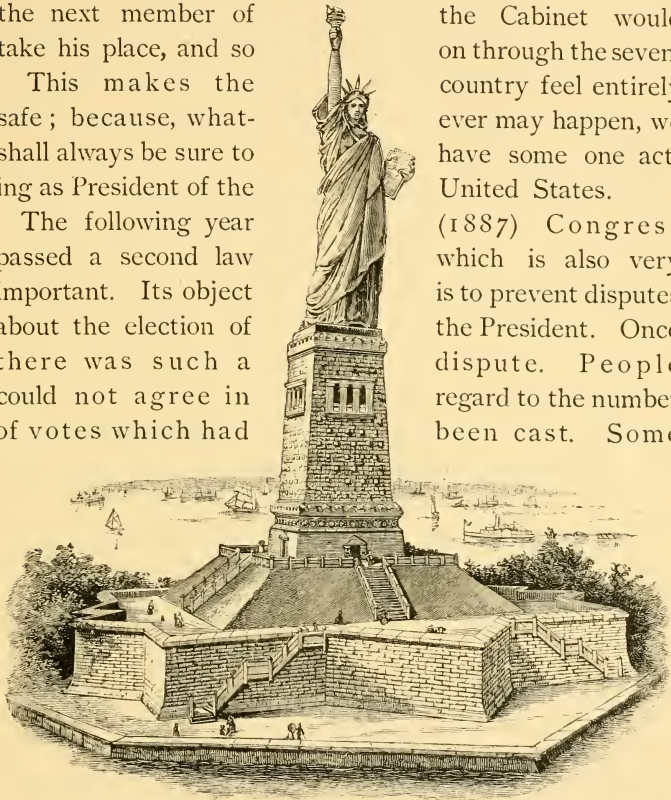
Cabinet¹ shall become President. If he should die, then the next member of the Cabinet would take his place, and so on through the seven.

This makes the country feel entirely safe; because, whatever may happen, we have some one acting as President of the United States.

The following year (1887) Congress passed a second law which is also very important. Its object is to prevent disputes about the election of the President. Once there was such a dispute. People could not agree in regard to the number of votes which had been cast. Some

the country feel entirely safe; because, whatever may happen, we have some one acting as President of the United States.

(1887) Congress passed a second law which is also very important. Its object is to prevent disputes about the election of the President. Once there was such a dispute. People could not agree in regard to the number of votes which had been cast. Some



THE STATUE OF LIBERTY

said we had elected one man, and others that we had elected another. The whole country was very much

¹ The President appoints a number of persons to help him in his work (§ 139). They are called the Cabinet. He frequently meets with them and talks about the business of the United States.

excited over this troublesome question; but fortunately for us no real harm came from it.¹

For fear that some such thing might happen again, Congress made a law² about it. This law lays down rules for counting the votes so that there may be no quarreling as to who is elected.

255. Review. — While Grover Cleveland was President a grand statue of Liberty giving light to the world was erected on an island in the harbor of New York City. The statue was given to us by people in France to show their friendship for America, the home of liberty.

Not long afterward Congress passed two very important laws. The first of these tells us who shall be President in case the President and Vice President should both die about the same time or should be removed from office.

The second law tells us how the votes are to be counted when the people elect a President. This is to prevent any dispute about the matter. Both laws help to make the country safer.

BENJAMIN HARRISON, TWENTY-THIRD PRESIDENT (1889-1893)

256. The President opens a new territory (1889). — If you look on the map facing page 305 you will see a territory, south of the state of Kansas, called Oklahoma.³ It is an Indian name, and means the "beautiful land." It was once a part of Indian Territory. But the United States

¹ This was the dispute whether Mr. Hayes or Mr. Tilden was elected President in 1876.

² The Presidential Election Act.

³ Oklahoma (ōk-lā-hō'mā).

bought the land from the red men, and Mr. Harrison opened it to white men who wished to go there (1889).

Many thousands of people had gathered, in the spring, close to the border of Oklahoma. They stood there ready to rush in when the President gave the word. He gave it and the "boomers," as they were called, poured into the new territory like the waters of a river when the dam is broken which holds them back.

Some of the settlers made haste to put up tents to live in; others nailed rough boards together and so made huts, or shanties.

Before the sun set that evening the streets of Guthrie,¹ the capital of Oklahoma, were laid out in straight lines. Stores were opened and people were buying and selling, just as they would in any city. That showed how they like to do things in the West.

Since that time the territory has grown rapidly. The people expect that it will soon be admitted as a state. When it is, it will add another star to our country's flag; for whenever a new state comes into the Union another star must be placed on the national banner (§ 128).

257. Six new states come in (1889-1890); our new ships of war. — By the time the corn was gathered that year (1889), four new states in the northwest were admitted. They were Montana,² Washington, North Dakota,³ and South Dakota.

The next summer two more in the same part of the country were admitted. They were Idaho⁴ and Wyoming.⁵ This made the whole number of states in the Union forty-four.

¹ Guthrie (gūth're). ² Montana (mōn-tā'na). ³ Dakota (dā-kō'ta).

⁴ Idaho (i'dā-hō).

⁵ Wyoming (wi-ō'ming).

As the American republic was growing greater on land, it seemed but right that our power should also grow greater on the sea. The United States needed new and better ships of war. We now began to build some splendid steel battle ships. They were named with the names of states; others were built and named after our cities. These beautiful vessels were painted white, and people called them the "White Squadron."¹ We shall see before long what sort of fighting these ships could do when the country had need of them.

258. Review. — The year that President Benjamin Harrison came into office he opened the new territory of Oklahoma to white settlers. That territory has since grown very rapidly, and it will probably soon become a state and add a new star to our flag.

In the course of the next two years the six states of Montana, Washington, North Dakota, South Dakota, Idaho, and Wyoming were admitted to the Union. They made the whole number of states forty-four.

The United States now began to build new ships of war. They were constructed of steel and painted white. For that reason they got the name of the "White Squadron."

GROVER CLEVELAND (SECOND ELECTION),
TWENTY-FOURTH PRESIDENT

(1893-1897)

259. The great Exhibition in Chicago (1893). — Shortly after Grover Cleveland became President for the second time he opened a great exhibition at Chicago. It was

¹ Squadron (skwōd'rūn): a fleet or collection of vessels.



THE WORLD'S COLUMBIAN EXPOSITION AT CHICAGO — THE STATUE
OF THE REPUBLIC

called the World's Columbian Exposition.¹ It was a fair like that held in Philadelphia many years before (§ 244). The object of it was to celebrate the discovery of America by Columbus in 1492 (§ 10) and to show what great changes four hundred years had brought about. Among the new inventions which had come into use since the Exhibition at Philadelphia, were electric lights and electric street cars.

The exhibition buildings were erected on the shore of Lake Michigan, in Jackson Park, Chicago.

People flocked here from all parts of the world to visit the "White City" which had suddenly risen on the banks of the lake. It was a city which seemed to have in it everything that was best worth seeing. These things had been brought not only from all parts of the United States, but from every country on the earth.

There, too, on the water in front of the buildings, you could see a vessel made just like that in which Leif Ericson sailed when he discovered "Vinland the Good" (§ 3). Not far away you saw three vessels built exactly like those in which Columbus and his men made their wonderful voyage across the Atlantic in 1492. The queen of Spain had sent them over for us to look at.

260. We settle a dispute with England; a new western state admitted. — The year of the great Chicago fair was also the year in which we settled a dispute with England. It was about Alaska. When we bought that country from Russia (§ 240) we supposed that we got the right to shut Bering² Sea against people of other countries who wanted to hunt seals there (see map on page 275). The

¹ Exposition: exhibition.

² Bering (bē'ring).

fur of these creatures is very valuable, and we naturally wished our own people to get it all.

But the English said there must be some mistake about it, and that we could not have bought the right to shut up Bering Sea. In old times such a dispute would have been pretty sure to have ended in war. But the United States and England did not mean to fight each other. Instead of telling the commanders of their war ships to make ready for battle, they agreed on a better plan. They said, We will leave the question to seven fair-minded men. They shall decide it for us both.

The seven men met and talked the matter over. Then they made up their minds what ought to be done. They said, Bering Sea must be kept open to everybody. But the United States has the right to protect the seals, and they must not be hunted and killed except at certain times in the year.

Since then we have decided a number of other disputes with England, and with other countries, too. We have decided them in the same way; that is, by letting a number of fair-minded men say what should be done. That is certainly a far cheaper and far better way than fighting.

Before Mr. Cleveland went out of office we added another state to the Union (1896). This was Utah (§ 199). It made the forty-fifth state in the republic, and so it made the whole number of stars on our flag forty-five (§ 128).

261. Review. — While Grover Cleveland was President for the second time a great exhibition was opened at Chicago. The object of it was to celebrate the discovery of America by Columbus, four hundred years before, and to show how our country had grown.

We also settled a dispute with England about hunting seals in Bering Sea. It was agreed that the sea must be kept open to everybody, but that the United States could prevent any one from killing the seals except at certain times in the year.

Utah was admitted as the forty-fifth state in the Union. It also made the forty-fifth star on that flag which we are all proud of, and which we all honor.

WILLIAM McKINLEY AND THEODORE ROOSEVELT,
TWENTY-FIFTH AND TWENTY-SIXTH
PRESIDENTS (1897-1905)

262. How the people of Spain lost possession of America.

— You remember that when Columbus discovered America he took possession of it for the king and queen of Spain (§ 10). The Spaniards then came over and made settlements in Cuba and other islands of the West Indies. Then they conquered Mexico and Florida, and built towns in those countries.

For a long time the Spaniards were the only white men who had any settlements in any part of North America. For this reason they said that the whole country — including all of what is now the United States — belonged to them, and that no one else had any right to come here.

Next, we have seen how, piece by piece, the Spaniards lost possession of this great country. First, the English settled Virginia and the other colonies in the east. Secondly, the French got that immense piece called Louisiana, which they sold to us (§ 151). Thirdly, the king of

Spain sold Florida to us (§ 167). Then the people of Mexico broke loose from Spain and drove the Spanish soldiers out of the land.

At last, the Spaniards had nothing at all left on the mainland or continent of North America. But they still owned several islands in the West Indies. The two largest and best of these were Cuba and Porto Rico¹ (see map below).



263. The people of Cuba fight Spain ; the destruction of the *Maine* (1898).— The king of Spain treated the people of Cuba so badly that most of them resolved to fight. War began between the Cubans and the Spaniards.

Many Cubans were starved to death. Finally, President McKinley told the Spaniards that they must find some way of helping those who were dying for want of food.

Shortly after that we sent the *Maine*, one of our new war ships (§ 257), to visit the city of Havana (see map above). While the *Maine* was lying at anchor in the harbor of that city she was blown to pieces and a great many of her officers and crew were killed (1898). We tried to find out what caused the explosion, but we did not succeed ; though

¹ Porto Rico (pōr'tō rē'kō).

most people thought that the Spaniards blew her up. Still, even to-day, no one can say just how the *Maine* was destroyed.

264. We make war on Spain; the battle of Manila,¹ 1898. — Then President McKinley said, The war in Cuba must stop. Next, Congress declared the people of Cuba independent. At the same time Congress told the king of Spain² that all Spanish soldiers must be called home from Cuba, and the people there must be left to govern themselves.

Spain refused to give Cuba her freedom, so, in the spring of 1898, we sent two fleets of war ships to make her do it. War then began between Spain and the United States.

We sent two fleets because we meant to strike Spain at two different points at the same time. One fleet was ordered to go to Cuba; the other was ordered to go to the Philippine³ Islands, in the Pacific Ocean (see map on page 301). These islands belonged to Spain. If, then, we hit Spain in Cuba, and also hit her in the Philippines, we should give her one hard knock on one side of the world, and, at the same time, we should give her another on the other side.

Now it so happened that the people of the Philippines hated the Spaniards quite as much as the Cubans did, and they had long been fighting to get free.

The largest city in the Philippines is Manila, and the Spaniards had a number of war ships in the harbor of that city to guard against any attack by us.

¹ Manila (ma-nī'l'a).

² The king of Spain was then too young to rule, and his mother acted in his place; but everything was done in his name. He is now king.

³ Philippine (fil'ip-īn).

President McKinley ordered Commodore¹ Dewey to go to Manila and capture or destroy the Spanish fleet there. Commodore Dewey sailed at once.

Not long afterward he sent word to the President that he had destroyed every vessel of the Spanish fleet. In the fight not one of our men was killed. It was a wonderful piece of work ; it showed that Americans can fire a cannon ball straight to the mark. We had hit Spain in the Philippines, now we were going to try to hit her in Cuba.

265. Fighting in Cuba ; the land battle of Santiago.²— The President sent an army to Cuba and at the same time he sent a fleet of our new war ships (§ 257), under command of Captain Sampson,³ to help them.

Among those who went along with our regular army there were a number of young men that the people called the “Rough Riders.” That was because many of them came from the West, and part of them had been cowboys. The cowboys look after the great herds of cattle, and as they spend most of their time on horseback they can ride the wildest pony that ever galloped across the plains. It was in that kind of outdoor school that “Buffalo Bill” (§ 201) got much of his early education.

Colonel Theodore Roosevelt had spent a good deal of time at the West, and he knew all about cowboys. In the course of the war in Cuba he had command of the “Rough Riders.” They did some very sharp fighting, but they did it on foot. Most of the battles there were fought by the regular soldiers of the United States army.

¹ He was later made admiral. ² Santiago (sän-tē-ä'gō).

³ Captain Sampson was later made admiral.

In the summer of 1898 a battle took place near the city of Santiago on the southern coast of Cuba. The Spaniards held the top of some steep hills, and they thought that they could stop our men from coming up by building barbed-wire fences.

Now a barbed-wire fence is an ugly thing to run against anywhere ; but our soldiers rushed up the hills, broke through the fences, and drove off the Spaniards.

The enemy then took refuge in Santiago, where a number of Spanish war ships had already slyly crept into the harbor.

266. The battle at sea at Santiago. — Captain Sampson's war ships were waiting outside to catch the Spanish vessels when they appeared.

Presently some of the men on board the *Brooklyn*, Commodore Schley's¹ ship, shouted, "Here come the Spaniards!" Sure enough, their vessels were slipping out of the harbor of Santiago.

Our ships and theirs began to fire at each other at the same moment. But the Spaniards did not do any better than they had done at Manila (§ 264). In a very short time nothing was left of their fleet but some blazing wrecks.

We took the Spanish commander and most of his men prisoners, and carried them to one of the northern states. The poor fellows were terribly frightened, for they thought that we should fasten them down with chains and starve them.

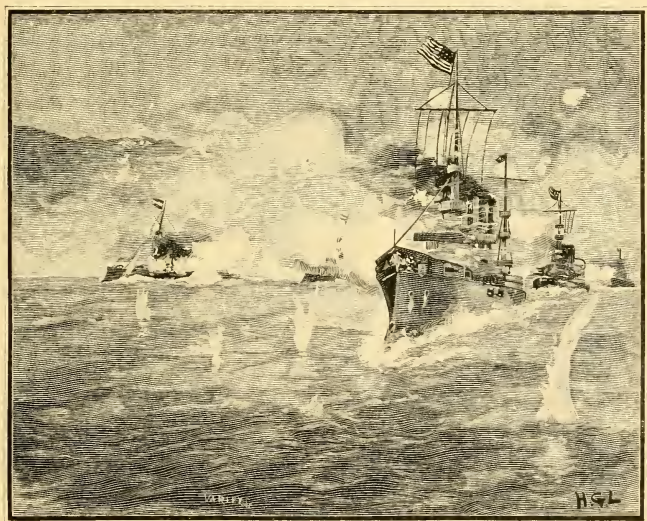
267. The end of the war with Spain (1898). — The war with Spain now came to an end. The king of that country gave Cuba her freedom. To-day Cuba is a republic,

¹ Schley (schlä); he was made an admiral not long after this.

and has a president and congress. Next, the king of Spain sold the Philippine Islands to us (§ 264) for twenty millions of dollars.

Besides that, he gave us the island of Porto Rico in the West Indies, and the little island of Guam,¹ west of the Philippines (see map on page 301).

Now that the war was over, something had to be done about the Spanish prisoners that we had taken and sent



BATTLE OF SANTIAGO

North (§ 266). What had we done to them? This is what we did: There is an old and very wise Book which says, "If thine enemy hunger, feed him; if he thirst, give him drink." We did to the Spanish prisoners, in New

¹ Guam (gŭām).

Hampshire, what that Book tells us to do. The terrible Yankees treated them so well that they hardly wanted to go back to Spain again. When they sailed away they gave three rousing cheers for the people of the United States. We can be very certain that we have no better friends anywhere than those men are to-day.

268. Hawaii¹ and our other new island possessions. — Just before our war with Spain came to an end we added a group of islands in the Pacific. These were the islands of Hawaii.² They are about twenty-five hundred miles southwest of San Francisco (see map on page 301). Many of the people of Hawaii were friendly to us and wished to see their country become a part of the American republic.

These islands, with those which we obtained from Spain (§ 267), make the eighth lot of land which we have added to the United States.

Look at the map on page 301 and you will see how we have grown since Washington became our first President.

First, we added the Louisiana Country (1803); secondly, the territory of Florida (1819); thirdly, the great state of Texas (1845); fourthly, the Oregon Country (1846); fifthly, California, New Mexico, and Utah (1848); sixthly, the piece of land called the "Gadsden Purchase" (1853); seventhly, the territory of Alaska (1867); eighthly, the island of Porto Rico in the Atlantic Ocean, besides Hawaii, Guam, and the Philippines in the Pacific.³

¹ Hawaii (hä-wī'ē).

² They are sometimes called the Sandwich Islands.

³ See §§ 151, 167, 192, 194, 196, 240, 267, 268, and maps on pages 168, 185, 211, 215, 218, 219, 275, 301.

To-day the flag of the United States flies over nearly all the best part of the North American continent, and over islands which extend halfway around the globe.

269. How our people have grown in numbers. — The people of the United States have grown in numbers just as the republic has grown in territory. You remember that, when Washington was President, Congress ordered a census, or count, of the people to be made (§ 141). This was the first time it had been done. It was found then that the whole number of people (1790) was not quite four millions.

While Mr. McKinley was President Congress took the twelfth census in 1900, and we then found that we had more than seventy-six millions. That showed that we had nearly twenty times as many people as we had in the time of our first President.

270. The Mutineers¹; President McKinley murdered; Vice President Roosevelt becomes President (1901). — But although our country had grown greater in every way, and although no people in the world were so well off as ours, still a few were discontented. They belonged to a small class who can be found everywhere. They say they do not want any president, any congress, or any law whatever. They want to do just as they please in everything.

A number of sailors tried that a great many years ago.² They did not like the way in which the captain managed the ship, so they rose and took possession of it themselves.

¹ Mutineers (mū'tī-nērz').

² This was the famous mutiny on the English ship *Bounty*, in 1789. The mutineers made a settlement on Pitcairn's Island.



THE LOUISIANA PURCHASE EXPOSITION AT ST. LOUIS

Then a part of these mutineers made a settlement on an island in the Pacific Ocean.

There they determined to live just as they liked. They resolved to have no rules and no law about anything. No one was to own any land, but each man was to build a hut wherever he saw fit, and spend his time in any way that he fancied. They believed that in that way they should make sure of being perfectly happy.

Well, they were happy for a little while. Then they began to quarrel among themselves. There was no power to stop them or to make peace among them. In a few years so many had killed each other that it was plain no one would be left alive soon. At last, those who were left said, We must choose a governor and make laws, for if we keep on in this way we shall all be dead men.

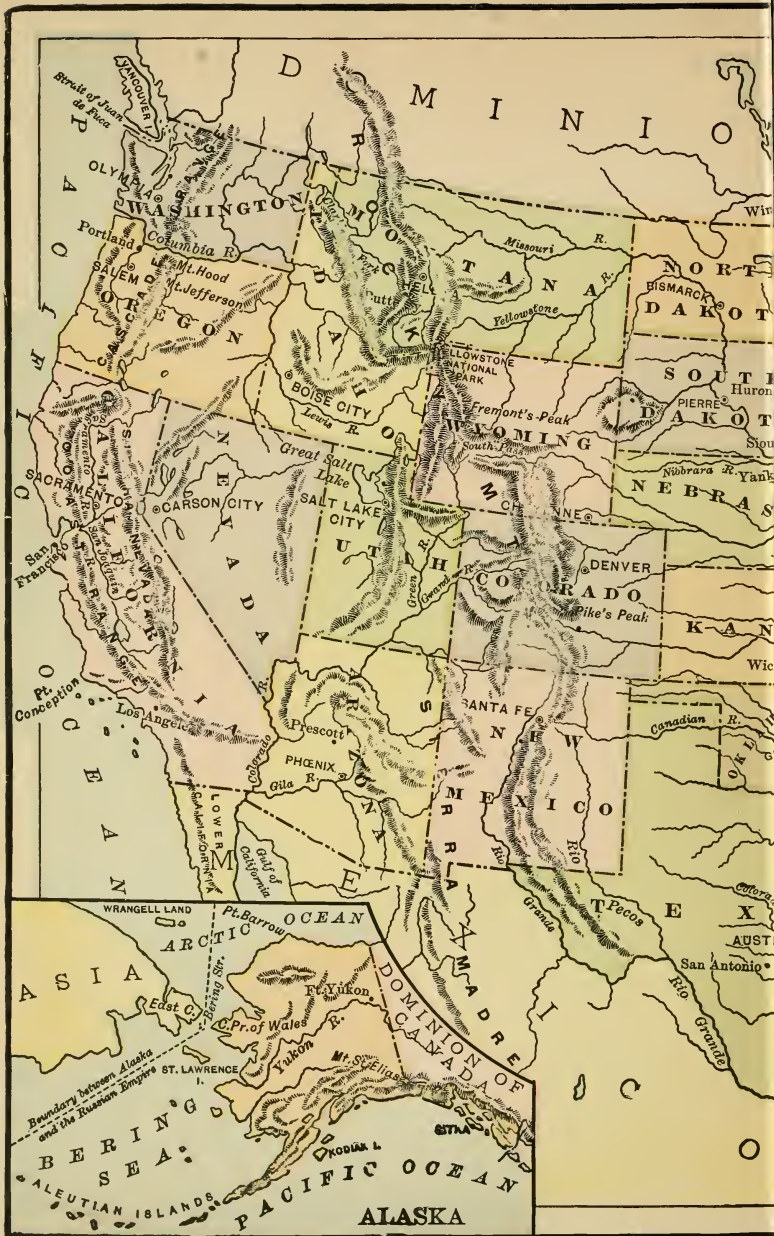
They did choose a governor and make laws, and so a small number of them still keep possession of the island.

But unfortunately there are a few people in the world who feel as the mutineers did before they had learned how impossible it is to live without a government.

One of these men shot President McKinley (1901). He was a young man, the son of some immigrants who had come to our country from Poland. He had no reason for killing the President. He was simply discontented with everything and everybody. In order to show his discontent he murdered the man who stood highest in the nation.

Then, according to law, Vice President Roosevelt (§ 265) became the twenty-sixth President of the United States.

271. President Roosevelt sends a telegram around the world (1903). — On the Fourth of July, 1903, some of our

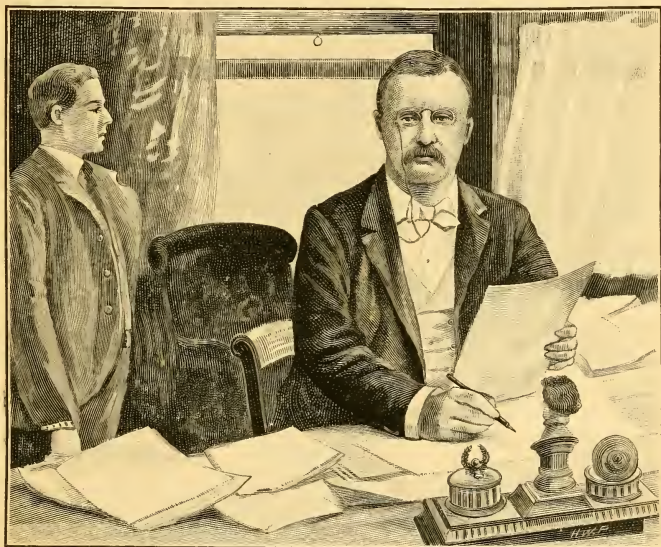




MAP OF
THE
UNITED STATES

people completed a great piece of work. They finished laying an American telegraph cable from San Francisco to Hawaii, and from those islands to Manila in the Philippines (see map on page 301).

That cable connects with one which goes to Hong Kong, China, and then around the world.



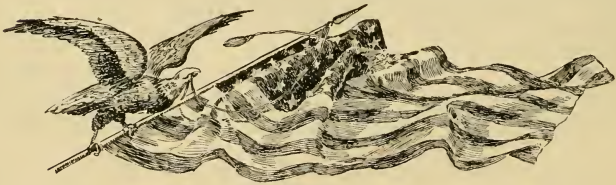
PRESIDENT ROOSEVELT WRITING THE TELEGRAM WHICH WENT AROUND
THE WORLD

On Independence Day President Roosevelt sent the first words which passed over the new cable. They were words which told of our good will. Standing in a room in the President's summer home at Oyster Bay, on Long Island, the telegraph operator flashed the electric message westward.

Let us follow it on its path. First, it passed across our continent to San Francisco; then it passed by the new American cable across the Pacific Ocean to Hawaii and to Manila; from Manila it went by cable to Hong Kong, China; from China it went to India; from India to Suez; from Suez to Gibraltar; thence on to Lisbon and the Islands of the Azores; and then on, by cable, across the Atlantic to New York, and back to Oyster Bay.

It took only twelve minutes for the President's message to circle the globe—a distance of twenty-five thousand miles.

The United States was the first nation that ever sent such a message clear around the earth. In one way that meant that the power and the good will of America now make themselves felt on every continent in the world.



QUESTIONS ON ELEMENTARY AMERICAN HISTORY

- § 1. Where did the Northmen live? What did they do in England?
- § 2. What island did they discover northwest of England? What country did Eric the Red discover?
- § 3. What land did Leif Ericson discover about the year 1000?
- § 4. Where was Vinland? Did the Northmen discover America? Did they keep their hold on the country or did they lose it?
- § 5. Have the Northmen done anything for America since? Can any Northmen's names be seen here? What are they? Are the Northmen still coming here?
- § 6. What happened nearly five hundred years after Leif Ericson found Vinland? Where was Columbus born? What did he do when he was a boy? Where did the spices, silks, and pearls come from? Did they come all the way by water? Did that make them cheaper or dearer?
- § 7. How did Columbus think that he could get to the Indies? Who helped him to fit out some vessels? How many vessels did he have?
- § 8. From what port did he sail? When did he sail? To what islands did he go? Why did he go to those islands? How far did he think it was from Spain to the Indies? How far is it?
- § 9. When did Columbus leave the Canary Islands? How did the sailors feel about going? What happened after they had been at sea about ten days? What did they think about the seaweed they ran into? What did they notice about the wind? What did they think about it? What did Columbus do?
- § 10. What happened the next day? What did the seaman on the watch cry out the following night? What did Columbus see when the sun rose on October 12, 1492? What did he do? What did he name the island? What did he name all the islands which he saw? Why? What did he call the people who lived on these islands? Why did he call them by that name?
- § 11. How was Columbus received when he returned to Spain? What did the people of Spain think he had discovered? Did he ever get to the Indies? Why not? What did he think the seacoast was? What did he try to do? What happened to Columbus? How had he failed? How had he succeeded? Did he discover any country greater and richer than the Indies?
- § 12. Did Columbus ever set foot on any part of the mainland of North America? What part of the continent was it? What did John Cabot do in 1497? Where did Cabot live? Why did he make a voyage to the west? When did he see land? What land did he probably see?

What did he do there? Whose country did this become? Did the English come here at once and make settlements? When did they come?

§ 13. What voyage did Amerigo Vespucci make? What did he call the countries he visited? What did the teacher who was getting out a geography call this country? Why did he call it by that name? What year was that?

§ 14. **Review.** When did Leif Ericson discover America? What did he call the land he discovered? Did the Northmen stay in Vinland? Did they get any good from their discovery?

Who was Christopher Columbus? From what country did he set out to find a short way to the Indies by water? When did he discover America? What did he think the land was? What did he call it? What did he name the inhabitants?

Who was John Cabot? When did he sail? From what place did he sail? Where did he land? When did he land? What did he do about the country he had discovered?

Who was Amerigo Vespucci? From what country did he sail? What did he discover? What did he do? What name was given to the "New World" in 1507?

§ 15. What did the Spaniards discover? What name did they give to the country? What ocean did some Spaniards discover? What country did they conquer? Tell all you can about Coronado. What did he see? How far east did he get? What is said about De Soto? Where was he buried? What fort did the Spaniards build in Florida? What year did they build it? What is the oldest town in the United States?

§ 16. Tell about Sir Francis Drake's voyage. Where did he land? What did he do in Oregon? What did Sir Walter Raleigh do? Where did Raleigh's men land? What did the Indians do? What did Queen Elizabeth name the country? How large was that country?

§ 17. What did Sir Walter Raleigh try to do? Did he succeed? What two things did he get from Virginia? What white men had possession of America in 1600? Were there any English settlements left here then?

§ 18. **Review.** What country did the Spaniards discover? What country did they take possession of? What did Coronado and De Soto do? What river did De Soto discover? Who built St. Augustine in Florida in 1565? What is said about that town?

What did the French try to do? What two countries did the English take possession of? What is said about Sir Walter Raleigh? What did he get from Virginia?

Who were the only white men left in North America in 1600? What did they declare?

§ 19. What is said about the Indians? How did they live? What animals did they have? Did they have any iron or steel tools? What did they have? What did they use to shoot with? Did the Indian children go to school? What did they know? Did they have any books? What could they do?

§ 20. How did the Indians get their living? What did the men do? Who did the work? Tell what they did. Who did the moving? Who built the wigwams?

§ 21. Did the Indians have any roads? What did they have? What is said about their trails? What changes did the white men make in these trails? What is said about the trails and our railways? What other ways did the Indians have of getting through the country?

§ 22. Was the whole number of Indians very large? Why not? Why did the Indians need a great deal of woodland? What often made trouble between the white settlers and the Indians? Did the Indians ever clear the land? Did they try to keep it cleared? What did the white men do about the land?

§ 23. What did the Indians teach the white men? What is said about the corn crop of the United States?

§ 24. **Review.** What people did Columbus name Indians? What was their color? How did they live? Did they have any animals? Did they have any tools or weapons of iron or steel? How did they get their living? What did the men do? What did the women do? What is said of Indian trails and of canoes? Why were not the Indians very numerous? What did the Indians and the whites sometimes quarrel about? Were the Indians ever friendly to the white settlers? What did they show them how to do?

§ 25. Who held possession of the whole of America in 1600? Where had these people made settlements? Where did the French make a settlement in 1608? For what two reasons did the English determine to come back to America?

§ 26. What two companies were now formed in England to send emigrants to Virginia?

§ 27. What company sent over the first shipload of emigrants? How many were there? Were they workingmen? What did they expect to find here? Did they mean to stay here?

§ 28. When did they arrive in Virginia? Where did they land? What name did they give to the town they built? Why did they so name it? What happened to them that summer? What is said about Captain John Smith?

§ 29. How was his life saved? What did Pocahontas do for the colonists at Jamestown?

§ 30. What did Captain John Smith do after he was made governor? What great truth did the colonists learn from him?

§ 31. Why did he go back to England? What did the new governor give the colonists? What effect did his gift have? What did John Rolfe plant? What is said about tobacco?

§ 32. Why did many emigrants now come to Virginia? What is said about the coming of some English girls? What is said about the tobacco trade?

§ 33. In what year did negro slavery begin in Virginia? How did it begin? How did people feel about buying negroes then? Did slavery spread to the other colonies?

§ 34. Did the planters buy any white laborers? Why? Tell what you can about the three kinds of white laborers who came to America. Did they ever become free?

§ 35. What great privilege did the people of Virginia get in 1619? Who had made the laws in Virginia up to that time? What did the

governor now ask the people to do? Where did the representatives meet and what did they do? Did they ever lose that privilege? What is said about the people of the United States to-day? What should we remember?

§ 36. **Review.** Where did the first English colonists, who came here to stay, settle? In what year? Who did more for the colony than any one else? What was the first profitable crop which the colonists raised? Where did they sell it? What did the colonists buy? In what year did slavery begin in America? Did the colonists buy any other laborers? Did these last laborers ever get their freedom? What great privilege did the people of Virginia gain? In what year was that? Can you give one reason why the United States is a free country? What is meant by a free country?

§ 37. Who was Henry Hudson? What did a Dutch trading company hire him to do? What great river did he discover? What is that river called now?

§ 38. What country did the Dutch take possession of? What name did they give to it? What did that name mean? What island did a Dutch trading company buy? What did they give for it? What did they name the settlement they made there? What city stands on that island now? What is the land worth on which the city stands? How long would it take a boy to count that sum?

§ 39. What did the Dutch buy from the Indians in New Netherland? What more did they want to do? What did they offer to give? What is the meaning of patroon? How much land did the patroon Van Rensselaer have? Describe his manner of living.

§ 40. What did the king of England think about New Netherland? Why did he say the country belonged to England? Who was the Dutch governor of New Netherland at that time? Tell what happened in the summer of 1664. What name was then given to New Netherland? Why? What name was given to New Amsterdam? Why?

§ 41. What did the duke of York do with the southern part of New Netherland? Why was this part of the country now called New Jersey?

§ 42. Who bought New Jersey? How did the Quakers treat the Indians? How did the Indians feel toward the Quakers? What did they say?

§ 43. What did the Quakers do for the emigrants coming to New Jersey? What is said about the colony? What was at last done with New Jersey? Who was the last royal governor of the colony?

§ 44. **Review.** What river did Captain Henry Hudson discover? Who took possession of that part of the country? What did they call it? What island did they buy? What did they build on it? What did the English do? What name did they give to New Netherland, and what to New Amsterdam? What name did that part of New Netherland get which lay south of the Hudson River? To whom was it sold? What did the Quakers do for the people who came there?

§ 45. How did the king of England pay a debt which he owed to William Penn? What did the king name the country? What does that name mean? Did the king know that there were coal and iron mines in Pennsylvania?

§ 46. To what kind of people did William Penn belong? Tell the four ways in which the Quakers differed from most of the English of that day. What did they say about every man's heart? How did the greater part of the English feel toward the Quakers? What did they do to them? Why was William Penn glad to get Pennsylvania?

§ 47. What did Penn do? Where did he land? Who first settled in that country? How did Penn come into possession of Delaware territory? What did one of the Duke of York's officers do when Penn landed? Why did he do these things?

§ 48. What city did William Penn begin to build? What made him lay out the streets in straight lines? What is the meaning of the name Philadelphia? What did Penn hope and believe?

§ 49. What did Penn invite the colonists to do? What two important laws did Penn and the colonists make? What did Penn do about the land? What treaty did Penn make with the Indians? Why did the Indians give Penn a belt? Describe the belt.

§ 50. What other emigrants came to Pennsylvania? What did those do who had no money to pay their passage to America? What is one of the best things about our country? What was the one thing in which all these different people agreed? Of what material does the United States build its great battle ships? Why? What is said about different people building up a republic?

§ 51. **Review.** What did the king of England give to William Penn? Who was William Penn? What did he buy? What city did he build? Why? What people came to Pennsylvania later on?

§ 52. What people went from England to Holland? Why did they go there? Why did they resolve to leave Holland and go to America? To what country did they go first after leaving Holland? What town did they sail from in England? In what year? In what vessel? How many Pilgrims were there? What is said about the children?

§ 53. Where and when did the *Mayflower* first come to anchor? What two things did the Pilgrims do there? What did the Pilgrims do a month later? What is said about that rock? What did the men do on Christmas Day, 1620? What did they call the town they built?

§ 54. What happened the first winter at Plymouth? Did any of the Pilgrims go back in the *Mayflower* in the spring? Why not? What strange visitor did the Pilgrims have? What did he say? What Indian chief did he soon after bring to Plymouth? What did Governor Carver and Massasoit do? What is said about that treaty? What did the Indians do to help the Pilgrims? Tell about the first Thanksgiving. How many people keep Thanksgiving now?

§ 55. What did Massasoit tell the colonists? Why were these Indians going to attack the Pilgrims? Who went from Plymouth to inquire into the matter? What happened? How did the Pilgrims manage their public business? What is said about town meetings?

§ 56. Where did another band of English people make a settlement on the coast of Massachusetts? Why did these emigrants leave England? Why were they called Puritans? Who came over in 1630? What town did these emigrants begin to build in that year? Why did they name it Boston?

§ 57. After a time what colony was joined to Massachusetts Colony? What were the Puritans determined to do? What people did they drive out of Massachusetts?

§ 58. Who could vote in Massachusetts? What is said about schools? What about Harvard College?

§ 59. What is said about the land between the Merrimac and Kennebec rivers? What was the largest town built there? When the territory was divided what was the eastern part called? What was the western part called? What was the largest settlement made in Maine? To what colony was Maine joined? When did Maine become an independent state? What was the country west of New Hampshire called? Where was the first settlement made? When did Vermont become a separate state?

§ 60. What emigrants settled Londonderry, New Hampshire? What did they do there?

§ 61. What was the country south of Massachusetts called? Who was one of the leaders of the emigrants who went from Massachusetts to Connecticut?

§ 62. Why did these people leave Cambridge? Tell about their journey through the woods to the Connecticut River. What city did they begin to build on the Connecticut?

§ 63. What three other towns were built later in Connecticut? What did the king do with New Haven Colony?

§ 64. What other famous man left Massachusetts and built up a new colony? Did Roger Williams leave Massachusetts of his own accord? What people did Mr. Williams say owned the land in Massachusetts? What did he say about the rulers of Massachusetts compelling people to go to church? What did the rulers decide to do about Mr. Williams?

§ 65. What did Mr. Williams do then? Tell about his journey through the woods. What did Massasoit do for him?

§ 66. What did Roger Williams do the next spring? What did he call the place where he settled? Why did he give it that name? What is said about Providence? What did Roger Williams tell the people that he invited to Rhode Island? Had any one else ever said that before in America?

§ 67. **Review.** When did the Pilgrims land? Where did they land? Who came in 1630? What did they do? Why did the Pilgrims and the Puritans emigrate to America? What happened to the colony of Plymouth? Can you tell why Plymouth was called the "Old Colony"? What is said about the colony of New Hampshire? What about Portsmouth and Londonderry? What is said about Mr. Hooker and others? What did they build? Where did English emigrants begin another colony? What was done with the colonies of Hartford and New Haven? Why did Roger Williams leave Massachusetts? Where did he go and what did he do? What is said about Rhode Island?

§ 68. What three different classes of people had come to America to worship God in their own way? What is said about the English Catholics? What did the king give to Lord Baltimore? What did the king call the country? Why?

§ 69. Where did the first Catholic emigrants land? What did they do? What did the Indians do for them? What is said about that

wigwam? Did Lord Baltimore invite any people but Catholics to go to Maryland? What did he do for all the settlers? What did some people do who moved to Maryland from Virginia and Massachusetts?

§ 70. What was the largest and best crop raised in Maryland? What happened after the city of Baltimore was begun? What did the Germans raise? What is said of Baltimore?

§ 71. What did King Charles the Second give to some of his friends? Why did the owners of the land name it Carolina? What city was begun there in 1680? Who were the Huguenots? Where did some of them settle? Name two famous Americans who descended from the Huguenots. What was done with the great colony of Carolina? What was the largest town in North Carolina? What was the largest town in South Carolina?

§ 72. What were the chief products of North Carolina? What did the planters in South Carolina raise? What plants did they begin to raise later?

§ 73. Why did General Oglethorpe want to begin a new colony in America? What did he persuade King George the Second to do? What was the colony called? Why? What town did the first emigrants build on the Savannah River?

§ 74. What did the colonists of Georgia try to produce? What was done with the silk they sent to London? Did the colonists keep on producing silk? What did they do? Do we make any silk goods in America now?

§ 75. What other emigrants came to Georgia? What did the people do there after they got slaves? What is said about the colony of Georgia? What good work did it do? Who had once owned the whole of North America? Who now held the whole Atlantic coast from Maine to Georgia?

§ 76. **Review.** Who settled Maryland? Why did they go there? What did they open there? What did they give to all settlers in Maryland? What two colonies were settled later? What did the colonists of North Carolina make? What did the planters of South Carolina raise? What is said about the first emigrants who came to Georgia? What did they try to produce? What did they do later?

§ 77. **General Review of the Thirteen Colonies.** How many years had passed since the English settled Jamestown, Virginia, in 1607? What four New England colonies had been established? What four middle colonies? What five southern colonies? How many colonies were there in all? What is said about a boy planting thirteen acorns? How long might such a grove of oak trees stand? How were the thirteen American colonies like oak trees? What do we believe about the colonies and the states which have been added to them?

§ 78. What was the first thing the colonists had to do when they landed in America? How did they make their houses? How did they make the walls, the floors, and the windows? How did they build the chimney? What did they often do about furniture, dishes, and beds?

§ 79. What did the settlers do after they had got their log houses built? How did they girdle trees? What did they do with the dead trees?

§ 80. What did the settlers get to eat? What did they do with corn and beans? What did they do with dry corn? How did they cook? How did they kindle a fire? What is said about matches? What

animals did the colonists bring to America? What other creatures did they bring? What did the Indians call the honeybee? What clothes did the settlers have?

§ 81. Where did the settlers build their first homes? Why? How did they build their houses in New England? How did they live at the South?

§ 82. How did the colonists travel through the woods? How did they usually get from one colony to another? Tell about their going by stagecoach? What advantage had they over us?

§ 83. What did the colonists have to read? When and where was the first printing press set up in America? When was the first American newspaper published? What three good things did the people of those days find out? What did they do with tramps, drunkards, thieves, and other rascals?

§ 84. In what condition were the emigrants who first came to America? Did they stay poor? Why not? What is said about their farms, plantations, and towns?

§ 85. What class of men often grew rich? What kind of houses did they build? How did they furnish them? What is said of their gardens? What is said about their stables? What is said about their slaves? Where were these faithful house servants sometimes buried? What is said about a grave in the old churchyard in Cambridge, Massachusetts? Can you repeat the lines which are cut on that gravestone? Who wrote them? What was the one thing about which all the people of America, whether rich or poor, agreed? How did they show this feeling?

§ 86. How did the white men generally treat the Indians? Did they usually buy the land from the Indians? What made trouble between the Indians and the whites?

§ 87. Where did the first Indian war break out? Tell about the Pequot war in Connecticut. Who conquered in that war?

§ 88. What was the most terrible of all the Indian wars? What is said about "King Philip"? What did he do? How did the Indians fight? Where and how did the war begin?

§ 89. What village did "King Philip's" warriors attack? How many villages did they burn? How long did the war last? How many white men did they kill? Did they carry off any prisoners? What did Captain Church do? What became of Philip's wife and little boy? What happened to "King Philip"? What is said about the cost of the war to Plymouth Colony?

§ 90. Who was Pontiac? How did he feel toward the French? What was his feeling toward the English? What did Pontiac say to the western Indians? What did the Indians do? How did Pontiac's war end?

§ 91. When peace was made, what did the western Indians do about the children they had stolen? Did all of the children want to leave the Indians? Tell the story of the mother and her daughter.

§ 92. **Review.** What was the first war the colonists had with the Indians? Where was the second war, and with what Indians? What terrible Indian war broke out later in Massachusetts? What is said about Pontiac? How did all these Indian wars end?

§ 93. When did the French begin to build Quebec in Canada? Two kinds of Frenchmen went to Canada; who were they, and why did they

go there? To what part of western Canada did some of the priests go? What did they do there? What did the Indians call them? Tell about the visits of the Indians to the priests' cabin. What Indians came and broke up the little settlement? Did those Indians drive the French out of Canada?

§ 94. How much farther west did the French go? What did they hear of there? What did the Indians call that river? What two Frenchmen set out to find that river? What did they think about the river? How did they get from Mackinaw to Green Bay? What did they do then? How did they get to the Wisconsin River? What did they do then?

§ 95. Tell what they saw as they drifted down the Mississippi. What place did they come to in about three weeks? Why did they stop at the mouth of the Arkansas River? What did the two Frenchmen think about the Mississippi? What did they decide to do? What is said about their arrival in Canada?

§ 96. What Frenchman determined to complete the work begun by Joliet and Father Marquette? Where did he build a small vessel? What is said of that vessel? To what place did he sail? What did he do then? After La Salle and his men had got to the southern end of Lake Michigan how did they get to a branch of the Illinois River? What did they do then? What time of the year was it when they entered the Mississippi? What happened on a day in April, 1682? What did La Salle and his men do then? In whose name did La Salle take possession of the Mississippi Valley? Why did La Salle name the country Louisiana? What two southern cities did the French begin to build later? How large was the territory of Louisiana? What is said about that great V-shaped wilderness? What is said about that territory to-day?

§ 97. **Review.** What did the French do in Canada? What river did they discover? Who went down that river to its mouth? What name did he give to the whole Mississippi Valley? Why? For what king did he take possession of it?

§ 98. What happened when the English colonists heard that La Salle had taken possession of Louisiana for the king of France? What Indians burned Schenectady? What settlements did the French Canadians and Indians destroy?

§ 99. What town did the Canadian Indians attack in Massachusetts? Tell the story of Mrs. Dustin.

§ 100. In the next French and Indian war what town in Massachusetts was burned? What did the New England colonists do? What is the name of that country now? In the third war with the French, what did Colonel Pepperrell do? What did the king of England give Colonel Pepperrell? Had any New England man received such an honor before?

§ 101. Did the French give up the fight? What did they mean to do? Where did they build forts in the west? Where did they begin to build several more forts?

§ 102. On what land did these new French forts stand? What did the governor of Virginia do in 1753? Did Washington want to go? Washington was born in 1732; how old was he now? What did the French commander say to him? What happened the next year (1754)?

§ 103. Who led a British army against Fort Duquesne? Where had the French built that fort? What did Washington tell General Braddock? What happened to Braddock's army when it had nearly reached Fort Duquesne? What happened to General Braddock? What is said about Washington?

§ 104. What did the French say then? What is said about William Pitt? What did Pitt do? Did the English get the French fort? What did they name the new fort they built? Is any of it still standing? What great manufacturing city has grown up around that fort?

§ 105. What did William Pitt do next? Where is Quebec built? What is said about General Montcalm? How did General Wolfe manage to get at Quebec? What did General Montcalm see when the sun rose?

§ 106. In what year was the battle of Quebec fought? After the battle began what happened to General Wolfe? What did he say? What happened to General Montcalm? What did he say? Did the English get Quebec? Who own the city to-day?

§ 107. What did the fall of Quebec mark? How long had the great war between the English and the French been going on? What is said about the English children in America who heard the first gun fired in that war? In what year was peace made? What was France forced to do? Why did not the king of France give up Louisiana west of the Mississippi to England? What had Spain done with Florida? How much of North America did England now own? How much did Spain own? Did France still own any land on the North American continent?

§ 108. **Review.** What was the object of the war in America between the English and the French? What did the Canadian Indians do? What country did the American colonists get possession of? What famous French fort did they take? What is said about General Braddock? Did the English ever take Fort Duquesne? What fort did the English build? What city has grown up around that fort? In what year was Quebec captured? Who captured it? What was done in 1763? After that treaty was made, how much of North America did France have left? How much did England then own? How much did Spain have?

§ 109. How did the king always give land to the colonists? What was that writing called? What two things did the charters tell the colonists? What did every charter promise to the English who came to America? Did the colonists forget that promise? What did the colonists say about their right to help make the laws in America? Why did they say that? In what colony did the people first take part in making the laws? Did they do the same thing in all the other thirteen colonies? Did they ever give up that right?

§ 110. What did the king do about most of the charters? What did he tell Sir Edmund Andros to do? Did Sir Edmund get the Connecticut charter? What happened when he tried to get it?

§ 111. What happened to Governor Andros in Boston?

§ 112. Did the American colonists have much liberty? Could they do as they pleased about sending things abroad to sell or about using them at home? Could the southern planters sell their tobacco in

Europe? What did the king's laws say about it? Could the people of Pennsylvania make their iron into what they pleased? Where did they have to get their axes, their nails, and their iron pots? Were the Americans permitted to make any fine woolen cloth? When people wanted such cloth what did they have to do? Did this picture have another side? Where did the king's laws order the people of England to buy all their tobacco? Could they buy it anywhere else? Do you think the southern planters liked this law? What is said about the price which the English makers charged the colonists for axes, ironware, and fine woolen cloth? Could the colonists then have made these things cheaper? What did the king of England buy over here? Did he pay a good price for these things? Did he pay more than the price? Why? Do you think the American colonists were very badly treated? What did Benjamin Franklin say about it? If you could lead a young, high-spirited horse by a thread what should you think about the horse?

§ 113. **Review.** What did the king's charters give the American colonists? Did all the colonists take part in making the laws here? What did the king do about most of the charters? Did the colonists still have the right to help make the American laws? Where did the colonists have to sell all the tobacco they sent abroad? Where did they have to buy their ironware and their fine woolen cloth? On the other hand, where did the English people have to buy all their tobacco? Did the English manufacturers charge the colonists a very high price for the goods they sold them? Could the colonists then have done better? Did the king of England buy anything in America? What kind of a price did he pay? What did Benjamin Franklin say?

§ 114. What happened after George the Third became king of England (1760)? What did Benjamin Franklin say then? What made this great change of feeling? What had George the Third resolved to do? How was he going to get money to pay these soldiers? Could the king take money from the people in England without their consent? What did the Americans say about the charters? What did they say about paying taxes? Did George the Third mean to treat the American colonists badly? What faults did he have? What reply did he make to the American colonists? Did that reply satisfy the colonists, or did it stir up a quarrel?

§ 115. What did George the Third then get the English Parliament in London to do? What did the Stamp Act command the Americans to do? What were the stamps like? If a man wanted to buy a piece of land was it necessary for him to buy a stamp? How was it if he bought a newspaper or an almanac? How much did the stamps cost? Did the Americans buy any of these stamps which were sent over from England? What did they do? What did they say about paying taxes? What was done about the Stamp Act?

§ 116. What did George the Third then decide to do? Where did the American colonists buy their window glass, paint, wall paper, and tea? What law did Parliament make about these things? Did the king sign the law? What did the Americans say about it? What did Samuel Adams of Boston say? What did thousands of people throughout the country do?

§ 117. What did George the Third finally think? Did he take off the tax on tea? How much of a tax was it? Were the Americans willing to drink the taxed tea? What happened when three ships loaded with taxed tea came to Boston (1773)? What happened to the taxed tea which was sent to New York, Pennsylvania, Maryland, and South Carolina?

§ 118. When George the Third heard of the destruction of the tea in Boston what did he do? Did any of the people of Boston suffer? Did the Americans beg the king's pardon? Did they offer to pay for the tea? What did the people of the other colonies do for Boston? What did this show?

§ 119. What did the people of the colonies now do? What was that meeting called? What did that Congress try to do? What did Patrick Henry say in the Virginia legislature? What did the farmers in Massachusetts and in the other colonies do? What kind of companies did they form? Why were they called minutemen? What did General Gage do in the spring of 1775? When did the British soldiers go? What did Paul Revere do? What happened at Lexington on April 19, 1775? What happened at Concord later in the same day? What happened when the British soldiers set out to go back to Boston? What was this the beginning of? How long did the war last? How did it end?

§ 120. What happened after the British had returned to Boston? What was that army around Boston called? How large was that army? What did General Gage find? What surprising sight did General Gage see on the morning of the 17th of June, 1775? What does Bunker Hill overlook? What is said about Colonel William Prescott? What did General Gage order part of his army to do? What did the Americans on Bunker Hill do? What word was passed along among them? What happened then? What happened the second time the British went up the hill? What happened the third time the British went up the hill? Why did the Americans have to give up the fort? Did General Gage feel like fighting another such battle? How many men had he lost?

§ 121. Meanwhile what had Congress done? What did Washington ask about Bunker Hill? What was the answer? What did Washington do at Cambridge?

§ 122. Why could Washington do nothing for a long time? What is said of Ethan Allen? What did Washington do when snow fell? Why did the Americans send two armies to Canada? Tell about Benedict Arnold going through the woods of Maine. Did the Americans take Quebec? What did Washington do at Dorchester Heights? What did General Howe do?

§ 123. What did Congress do on July 4, 1776? When the war began did the Americans mean to separate from England? What were they fighting for then? What would they fight for in future? What had they at last done?

§ 124. Did all the Americans agree about the Revolution? What did the greater part of the colonists say to the king? What were these people called? Who was their leader? Tell the story of Captain Nathan Hale of Connecticut. What did he say on the scaffold? What did these words show? What did some other Americans think about fighting the king? What is said about them? Name one of them. What did they

call themselves? Why? What did people generally call them? What did the Loyalists, or Tories, believe? What did they think they would get? What is said about part of the Tories? What did all of the Tories do before the war was over? Why did they go? Did any of them give up anything? What did General Howe do when he sailed from Boston? Did any more go afterward?

§ 125. Where did General Howe go from Halifax? What did General Washington do? What happened on Long Island in 1776? What was Washington forced to do? What is said of Lord Cornwallis? What river did Washington cross? Why did not Cornwallis follow him? What did Washington do on Christmas night, 1776? What is said about the soldiers' need of money? Was there much silver money then in the country? How about paper money? What did Washington say about that paper money?

§ 126. Who was Robert Morris? What did he do? What did Washington do two days later? What young French nobleman came to America in 1777? What did he do? What is said about some German military officers?

§ 127. What city did General Howe take? What was that city then? What did Washington do then? What happened in eastern New York? What had General Burgoyne started to do? What did Benedict Arnold and his men do at Saratoga, October 7, 1777?

§ 128. What did our drummers and fifers do? What did our color bearers carry? What was the new American flag? Read note 2. What flag did Washington raise at Cambridge on New Year's Day, 1776? How was that flag made? After we had declared ourselves independent what did Congress do in June, 1777? Describe that flag. Who may have designed it? Where was it made? Where was this new flag first raised? In what year? What was it made of? In what great and decisive battle was the new flag first carried? In what year? Who first raised it in the northwestern part of the United States? In what year? Who first displayed our new flag on an American war ship? In what year? Who first carried the new flag around the globe? In what year? How many stripes does the flag now have? Why? What is said about the stars? Do you know how many stars the flag has now? Why? What did the Americans do for Burgoyne's men? Why did the king of France hate the English? What did he say now? What did the king of England now offer to do? What was the one thing we were determined to have? Did the war go on?

§ 129. What is said about Washington's men at Valley Forge? What did the British at Philadelphia now do? Why? What battle did Washington now fight? What is said about that battle? What city did the British still hold? What wilderness did they hold? What great work did Captain George Rogers Clark do in 1778? What did Captain Paul Jones do on the ocean in 1778? What did Paul Jones show King George the Third?

§ 130. **Review.** How nearly are we through the Revolutionary War? When George the Third became king what did he resolve to do? What did he do about stamps? What did he do about taxed tea? What did the American colonists do? How did the king punish the Americans?

What happened at Lexington and Concord? After the battle of Bunker Hill what did Congress do? What happened on July 4, 1776? What did Washington do after the battle of Long Island? What city did the British take? What great victory did the Americans win at Saratoga, New York, in October, 1777? What flag did the Americans carry in that battle? What did the king of France now do? Did the British continue to stay in Philadelphia? What is said of George Rogers Clark? What about Captain Paul Jones? After the surrender of Burgoyne what did England offer the people of the United States? What did we reply?

§ 131. What did the British now think? What did they do? What towns in South Carolina did they capture? What did Lord Cornwallis then set out to do? What happened at Camden? What happened at Kings Mountain? What is said about Marion and Sumter? What would Marion do?

§ 132. What terrible thing now happened in New York state? What is said of Arnold at Quebec and at Saratoga? What had Washington done to reward him? What did Arnold do? What happened to André? Did Arnold escape? Was he ever caught? What did the British do for him? What did Arnold do there? What did Arnold ask an American patriot that he had captured? What reply did the American make? Where did Arnold go after the war was over? What is said of him there?

§ 133. What is said about General Greene? Did Cornwallis catch Greene? What game did General Greene play? What did Cornwallis make up his mind to do? Did Greene want him to go there? What did Greene do after Cornwallis had gone?

§ 134. What did Cornwallis do after going to Virginia? Where did Cornwallis finally decide to go? What was he going to do there? Where was Washington at that time? What did he do? Did Washington have any help? What soldiers and what fleet gave him help? What now happened to Cornwallis? What did he see on one side of Yorktown? What did he see on the other side? What then happened? What did Cornwallis do at the end of a week? What did that mean? How long was it since Burgoyne had surrendered? In what year did the British march out of Yorktown? What happened then? What did King George the Third say then? What was done in 1783?

§ 135. Review. What had King George the Third done? What did the American colonists do? What did they do the year after the war began? What was the first great victory won by the Americans? In what year did they win it? What did the king of France then do? What did Washington do four years later? What did the surrender of Cornwallis compel King George the Third to do? What had the Americans now gained?

§ 136. What is said about the people of the United States after the war was over? Could people send things to sell in all parts of the country without paying taxes on them? Was there freedom of trade between New England and the Middle States or between the Middle States and the South? What did the government need? Would the people give it? Did the country have a Congress then? Did it have a President? How long did the people go on in this way? What was the country like? What did Washington and other noted men finally say?

§ 137. How many men did the people send to the convention at Philadelphia? Name two of those men? What did the convention at last agree to do? What did they call the new agreement which they signed? Did the Constitution make many changes in the government? What did it say about a President? What would it be his duty to do? What power did the Constitution give Congress about money? Are any things mentioned here for which the government of the United States might need money? How could the government now get this money? What did the Constitution say that the people of a state must do if they got into a dispute about what Congress or the President had the right to do? What was done with the Constitution after the convention at Philadelphia had accepted it? What did the people do? What year was that? Are we still living under that Constitution? Have we made any additions to it? What are they called? Have any other countries copied parts of our Constitution? Name such a country.

§ 138. **Review.** After the War of the Revolution was over how did the people feel about the government they then had? What did they do? What did the new Constitution give us? Did we have a President before? Did we have a Congress? Can you tell what Congress does? Can you tell why it is a good thing to have a President as well as a Congress? (See § 136.)

§ 139. Who was chosen to be the first President of the United States? When and where was he made President? What was New York City then? When the work was finished what was done? Of what did the people feel certain? What four men did Washington select to help him carry on his work? Can you tell what any of these men did? (See note 2.) To what office did Washington appoint John Jay?

§ 140. What was the first thing which the United States had to do? Name some of the expenses of the United States (see § 137). What law did Congress pass? What did the tariff do? Explain how the United States could get money when a merchant imported tea into this country? Did we get much money by the tariff? Who took care of all this money? What did he advise Congress to do? What three great debts did we owe? What did Congress finally vote to do? Has the United States ever failed to pay back any money it has borrowed? What are we proud to say?

§ 141. Had the United States ever coined any gold or silver pieces up to this time? What sort of gold and silver money did we then have in the country? What did Thomas Jefferson say to Congress? What did Congress do? What did the mint at Philadelphia send out? What coins did the people begin to have from that time? Are our gold and silver coins good to-day? Are they good outside of the United States? What interesting question now came up? When was the first census taken? How many people did it show we had? When was the last census taken? How many people had we then? Has England, or France, or Germany, as many people as we have now?

§ 142. While Washington was President what happened in France? What war broke out then? What did the French do? What did Washington do? Why? How did the French people then feel toward us? What were a good many Americans now beginning to do? Where

did they make settlements? Where had Daniel Boone gone and what had he done? Where did companies of New England emigrants go? What settlement did they make? What settlement was made farther down the Ohio? What did the Indians in that part of the country try to do? What did President Washington do? What did the Indians say about General Wayne? Did General Wayne have a fight with the Indians? What did he make them do?

§ 143. What did the Southern planters want to raise? What difficulty was in the way? How long did it take a negro to pick off the seeds from a pound of cotton? Did that have any effect on the price of cotton? Who was Eli Whitney? What machine did he make? What would that machine do? What did the planters say then? What did they do? What were now built in New England? What did the South now send to England? Eli Whitney's invention did another thing; what was it? What did it do at the North? Why? What had Washington, Jefferson, and Franklin hoped about slavery? Did it now seem likely that the slaves would get their freedom? Can you tell why?

§ 144. Did we still have some disputes with England? What about? When we asked the king to give up the forts what did he say? What is said about our sending wheat to sell in France? What is said about our sending things to sell in the British West India Islands? What did Washington do? What did John Jay do? Did we get anything by that treaty? How did many of our people feel? What did most of the people believe?

§ 145. What great loss happened to the United States in 1799? What three states were admitted to the Union while Washington was President? How many states did that make in all?

§ 146. **Review.** While Washington was President what did we pay? What did we establish at Philadelphia? What else did we do? What did many people from the eastern states now do? What is said of General Wayne? What did Eli Whitney invent? What effect did his machine have on cotton raising and on slavery? What three states were added to the Union? How many states did that make in all?

§ 147. Who was our second President? What is said about the French? What did they threaten to do? What did Congress order? What was the name of the first one of these ships? Can you think of any reason why that ship got that name? What victories did we win at sea? What did the French do then?

§ 148. Why did Congress pass two new laws? What did those laws punish? What did Kentucky and Virginia say about those laws? Did the other states agree with them?

§ 149. **Review.** While John Adams was President what did the French do? What did we do? What two laws did Congress pass? What did Kentucky and Virginia say about them? What is said of the other states?

§ 150. Who was our third President? What had he written? What is said of the capitol building at Washington? What is said of the country around it? What is said about the city of Washington to-day? What people did we have to fight? What did those pirates do? What did they refuse to do? What did Jefferson do?

§ 151. What new state was admitted? How many states did that make? What did President Jefferson buy in 1803? Who sold that country to us? For how much? How large was that country? How much did it cost an acre? How much larger did it make the American republic? Did the United States extend beyond the Mississippi River when Washington was President? How far west did it extend after Jefferson bought the Louisiana Country?

§ 152. What two young men did Jefferson now send West? Why did he send them? Where did they start from? Up what river did they go? How far did they go? Did they meet with any white men? What did they see? What did Jefferson think about that wild country? Was he right? What did Lewis and Clark do after they had crossed the Rocky Mountains? What American had entered the Columbia River before them? What did he do there?

§ 153. What did Aaron Burr set out to do? What kind of man was Burr? What great man had he killed in a duel? What is it supposed Burr meant to do at the South? Did he succeed? What happened to him? How did people look upon him after that?

§ 154. What is said about England and France? What did each of these nations order the United States to do? What would happen if an American vessel started to carry wheat to France? What would happen if it started with a cargo of cotton to England? What was England in great need of at that time? What had many of her sailors done? What orders did the king of England give to the captains of his war ships? What did they do? What other sailors would they often carry off? What did they make these sailors do? Did this go on long? What did the English captains do at last? What did they take from the *Chesapeake*? Why did not Congress go to war about it? What order was now sent out? What was that order called? What effect did that order have in New England? What happened at last?

§ 155. How did people at that time go up the Hudson from New York City to Albany? How long did it take them? What did Robert Fulton do? When did he start for Albany? Did he get there? How long did it take him? Did Fulton's boat continue to go up and down the Hudson? What is said about the Ohio River, the Mississippi, and the Great Lakes? What did the Indians think about the steamboat? What did they call it? What happened in 1819? What is said about the first bicycle?

§ 156. **Review.** What pirates did Jefferson punish? Why? What country did he buy from France? In what year? How much larger did it make the United States? What two men made their way across that country to the Pacific? What is said of Captain Robert Gray? What was Aaron Burr arrested and tried for? What was done with him? Why? With what two countries did we get into trouble? Why? What did the captains of English ships do? What did they finally do? What did Congress order? What did that do? What did Robert Fulton do in 1807?

§ 157. Who was our fourth President? What did he try to do? Did he succeed? What happened in the territory west of Ohio? Who was Tecumseh? What is said about him? What did President Madison

do? Tell what happened while General Harrison's men were on the banks of Tippecanoe River? What did our soldiers do? What was that battle called?

§ 158. What were the captains of English war ships still doing? How many Americans had the king of England got in this way? What did he make them do? What did the United States do at last? What did Congress do in the summer of 1812?

§ 159. How did we begin the war of 1812? What did General Hull do at Detroit? Why did he give up the fort? What people took possession of that fort? What was done with General Hull? Did we gain any battles in Canada later? Where were our great victories gained?

§ 160. What American city did the English capture? What did they do there? What did they try to do next? What fort defended that city? Did they take that fort? What song was written about our flag?

§ 161. What was the name of the first war ship which Congress built for our new navy? What did the London papers call her? What was she really built of? Where was she built? (See § 147.) What did some people think about our ships going out to fight? What did others say? Who commanded the *Constitution*? What is said about him? What happened when the *Constitution* met the British war ship *Guerrière*? Was the *Constitution* much hurt in the fight? What did the people of Boston call her? Where is the *Constitution* to-day? Out of fifteen battles with the British, on the ocean, how many did we gain?

§ 162. What did Commodore Perry start to do on Lake Erie? Where did he get his vessels? Tell what he did on Lake Erie? What did Commodore Perry write to General Harrison? Where did Commodore Macdonough have an American fleet? What did he do in Plattsburg Bay?

§ 163. What did General Jackson now undertake to do? Had General Jackson ever whipped the Indians? What had he to do now? Who set out to take New Orleans? How many men did Jackson have? What kind of men were a good part of them? What did Jackson do? Then what happened? Who won the battle of New Orleans? Were there any more battles after that? What is this war always called? Why?

§ 164. What good did the War of 1812 do us? Did the British ever meddle with our ships or carry off any more of our sailors after that? How do England and America feel toward each other to-day? What two new states did we add while Madison was President? How many did that make in all?

§ 165. **Review.** What did General Harrison do? What did the United States do shortly after the battle of Tippecanoe? Why did we fight the War of 1812? What is said of the beginning of that war? What did our war ships do? Who fought the last great battle of the war? Where? Who won the victory? What is said about the English after peace was made? What have we done on the ocean?

§ 166. Who was our fifth President? What is said about him? What did men say then about good times?

§ 167. What did General Jackson do in Florida? What did the king of Spain think he had better do? Why? What did we pay for the territory of Florida? When did we add that territory to the United

States? What great piece of land did we buy in 1803? In what direction did that give us room to grow? In what new direction could we grow after we had bought Florida?

§ 168. What three states had entered the Union while Monroe was President? How many did this make in all? What is said of eleven of these states at the North? What is said of the eleven southern states? Does this show that slavery and freedom were equally divided at that time? What is said about all of these twenty-two states except Louisiana? Had anything then been said about making an entirely new state west of the Mississippi River? What did a part of Missouri territory, which lay wholly west of the Mississippi, now ask? What did it wish to do? What happened when Congress took up this question? What great change had taken place at the North? How did the people there feel about having a slave state made west of the Mississippi River? How did the people of the South feel about it? While this great dispute was going on what did Maine ask of Congress? What did the people of the South say to that?

§ 169. What is said about Henry Clay? What did he say about a plan of settlement which had been offered? According to that plan what would Maine do? What would Missouri do? Then what was to be done with all the rest of the territory west of the Mississippi River which lay north and west of the state of Missouri? What did Congress do about this plan? What two states were now admitted? How many states did this make in all? How many of these were free states? How many were slave states? What was this plan called? Why?

§ 170. What other question, besides the spread of slavery, was talked about in those days? Why did many people want a road built from the East to Ohio, Indiana, and Illinois? What did emigrants to the West think Congress ought to do? What did the farmers who had gone there and settled think? What did the merchants of the East think? How did President Monroe feel about it? Did any members of Congress agree with him? What did Henry Clay believe? What did he do? What did Congress finally decide to do? Did the road get as far as the Mississippi? How far did it get? Did it do any good? What did the people beyond the Alleghany Mountains do to show their gratitude to Henry Clay? Where is that monument? What does it call the great Kentuckian?

§ 171. How did the people on the western rivers use those rivers? With what were the Ohio and the Mississippi crowded? What did Abraham Lincoln and another boy do? What did they try to do when they got to New Orleans? What else went down the Ohio and the Mississippi rivers besides steamboats and flatboats? What kind of people were on these rivers? What did they do?

§ 172. In what two ways had the people of the United States now made themselves independent of Great Britain? What did President Monroe now claim for America? What did he say about the kings of Europe? What did England say about that? Was England on our side then? What is said about the people of Mexico setting up a republic? What did President Monroe declare? Do you know what this is called? (See note 1.) Does any one dispute this to-day?

§ 173. What European was sure of getting a hearty welcome if he came to America? What is said about him? Did he come? What year was that? How many states did we have at the close of the Revolution? How many did we have when this brave and generous Frenchman came to see us? How many of these states did he visit? What happened wherever he went? What had he done for us in our dark days? Did he come to us now rich or poor? What did we do for him?

§ 174. **Review.** What great piece of land did we buy while Monroe was President? How many new states did we add to the Union? How many did that make in all? What is said about letting in Missouri as a slave state? What did we undertake to build through the West? What did we say to Europe? Whom did we welcome as an old friend? What did we do for him?

§ 175. Who was our sixth President? What did the state of New York resolve to do? Would this be better than a road? Why? Tell all you can about the Erie Canal? What could people now do? What did thousands of emigrants do? What cities did they build up? What did the canal bring from the West? What did this do for New York state?

§ 176. What had been invented in England? What did the people here say about it? What did a company now begin to build? Who made the first engine for that road? In what year did it first run? What is said about that railway? How far would the railways of the United States reach now, if they were straightened out? Are they still growing longer?

§ 177. What did President John Quincy Adams want to see? What was one of the evils of that time? Tell all you can about it. What did some good men of that day do? Did they succeed in doing anything?

§ 178. **Review.** When John Quincy Adams was President what did the state of New York do? What four things did that canal do? What was opened in 1830? What is said about American railways now? In what reform did the President feel a great interest?

§ 179. Who was the seventh President of the United States? From what states had the six preceding Presidents come? From what part of the country did Andrew Jackson come? What did they call him out West? How did the people there feel toward him? How had a good many of them helped him? Where had others been with him?

§ 180. Who published a new kind of paper in Boston in 1831? What is said about him? What did he name his paper? Why? What did he say in the first number of his paper? What did most people in the South think about him? What did many in the North think? What did a few men there say? What did people who read *The Liberator* begin to do? Did they mean to go South and set the negroes free? What did they mean to do? What would crowds sometimes do about these meetings?

§ 181. What did societies in the North demand? What did people say who belonged to them? What did Mr. Garrison say must be done? What did nearly all the people in the North say to that? Did they believe in breaking up the Union? What did they think about it?

§ 182. What did the planters in South Carolina want to do about buying woolen and cotton cloth? Why? What law had Congress

passed? What was that tax called? Why did it get that name? What did John C. Calhoun of South Carolina say? What did the people of his state resolve to do? What did they say they would do if President Jackson tried to make them pay the tax? What were a few men in the North ready to do? Why? What did some slaveholders in South Carolina declare they would do? What did President Jackson say to the people of South Carolina? What did Henry Clay now persuade Congress to do? Did that do any good?

§ 183. What two new states were added to the Union while Jackson was President? How many did this make in all? How many did the republic have not quite fifty years before? What helped to fill the West with people? What is said about the Indians of Illinois, Wisconsin, and Iowa? What did they have to do? What is said of the Indians of Florida and Georgia? What did the United States ask an acre for land? What did that cheap land do for the West? Did farmers have to pay for it at once? What is said about mowing machines and reaping machines?

§ 184. What villages were growing at the West? What is said of Milwaukee? What is said of a small settlement at the southern end of Lake Michigan?

§ 185. **Review.** What is said about General Jackson? What is said about Garrison? This led to talk about what? What did some slaveholders in South Carolina threaten to do? What did Henry Clay do? What is said about the West? What two new states were added to the Union while Jackson was President? How many states did this make in all?

§ 186. Who was our eighth President? What happened soon after he became President? What made this distress? What is said about the farmers at this time? What happened in New York City? Did the hard times do any good?

§ 187. What is said about immigrants coming to America? Did you ever see a magnet draw a bunch of tacks to itself? How did many of these people live while in Europe? What is said about ocean steamers? How many immigrants sometimes come in a single steamer? How many come in a year? From what countries do the greater part of these immigrants now come? What sort of work do many of them get? What laws has Congress passed about immigrants landing here?

§ 188. **Review.** What happened shortly after Van Buren became President? Did the hard times do any good? What is said about immigrants coming here? What does the United States do about immigrants?

§ 189. Who was our ninth President? Who was chosen Vice President? What had General Harrison done? Was General Harrison President long? Who became our tenth President after he died?

§ 190. What is said about Professor Morse? Tell how he invented the telegraph. What did the dots and dashes stand for?

§ 191. When did Professor Morse build the first line of telegraph? Between what two cities did he build it? What was the first message he sent over it? What is said about the telegraph to-day? Are there any telegraph lines across the ocean? To what countries do these lines extend? Who invented the telephone? In what year? What is said about the telephone?

§ 192. What new southern state was admitted to the Union? How many did this make in all? What new piece of land was added to the United States? Did anybody object to the admission of Florida? How about the annexation of Texas? What did the people of Texas call themselves? Did Texas wish to be admitted to the United States? How large was Texas? Why did the southern members of Congress wish to get Texas? How did many of the northern members of Congress feel about it? What two reasons did they have for this feeling? Which party gained the day? Was Texas annexed? In what year? What two great pieces of land had we added before we got Texas?

§ 193. **Review.** In what year did Professor Morse build the first telegraph line in the world? Between what two cities did he build it? What is said about the construction of telegraph lines since that time? What is said about the telephone? While Tyler was President what new state did we add to the Union? How many states did that make in all?

§ 194. Who was our eleventh President? What did the people cry out about Oregon? What did the United States and Great Britain do about Oregon? How many great pieces of land had we added before we got Oregon? Can you name them? How far west did Oregon carry the northern part of the United States?

§ 195. What happened the year that we got the Oregon question settled? What river did Texas say was her western boundary? What did Mexico say to that? How many miles difference was there between the two boundaries? What did the United States resolve to do about that narrow strip of land? What did we send General Taylor to do in the spring of 1846? What is said about his battles? What general went out, by sea, to Mexico the next year? What did he do? Did our soldiers lose any battles in the Mexican War? What three young American officers fought in that war? What is said about them?

§ 196. When peace was made what did Mexico give us? How many additions had we now made to the territory of the United States? Can you tell what they were? What three new states had we admitted to the Union? Which one of these was the last slave state which came into the Union? How many states did this make in all?

§ 197. What did a man find at Captain Sutter's sawmill in California in 1848? What happened when the news got abroad?

§ 198. What happened when the news got to the East? What three ways did the gold seekers take to get to California? Were any of these ways easy? Tell what you can about the journey across the country to California. How many people entered California in a single year? How much gold did they get in about ten years?

§ 199. What is said about the Oregon Country? Where did the Mormons go? Why did they go there? What did they do in the desert? What is the name of their largest settlement?

§ 200. To what other western territories did people begin to emigrate? What towns did they build there? What happened when gold was found in Colorado in 1858? What is said about a new line of stagecoaches? What kind of an express was started later? What can you tell about that express? What was done about two years later?

§ 201. What new line of stagecoaches was now put on? Can you tell anything about traveling by these coaches?

§ 202. What great piece of work was finished in 1869? What did the Indians do when they saw and heard the locomotive? How many Pacific railways are there now in the United States? How many states do they run through? What made those states?

§ 203. **Review.** While James K. Polk was President what treaty did we make with Great Britain? What war began in 1846? What was it about? What is said of the battles in that war? What did Mexico do when peace was made? What did that land include? How many pieces of land had the United States added before? What three new states were admitted? How many did this make in all? What was discovered in California? What did it cause? What settlements had already been begun in the far West? Into what territories did emigrants begin to go? What is said about the "pony express"? What came after that express? What was built last? How many other great railways followed? What did they do for the West?

§ 204. Who was our twelfth President? What did California now ask? What did President Taylor want? How did Henry Clay feel? What did John C. Calhoun and other southern men want? What did they think about slavery? How did most northern members of Congress feel? What did Abraham Lincoln say? What did a few northern members of Congress say?

§ 205. Can you tell how Henry Clay tried to settle the dispute? What was his plan called? What did he say about California? What did he say about the rest of the territory we had received from Mexico? What new law did he say Congress could make?

§ 206. What did Calhoun declare about Clay's Compromise plan? Did Congress vote for the Compromise? Who became our thirteenth President after President Taylor's death? What state was admitted in 1850? How many states did that make?

§ 207. **Review.** Under President Taylor what did California ask? What did Congress do? After Vice President Fillmore had become President what plan did Congress accept? Did California come in as a free state or a slave state? How many states did we then have?

§ 208. Who was our fourteenth President? What happened the year after he became President? Where was the Platte Country? What did Stephen A. Douglas say about it? What did many people at the North say to this? What did Mr. Douglas reply? What did Congress vote to do in 1854? What is said about Kansas and Nebraska territories?

§ 209. What happened as soon as Congress passed the law about slavery in Kansas and Nebraska? What did emigrants from Massachusetts do?

§ 210. What did the Massachusetts emigrants call a Missouri man? What did the people of Missouri call a man from the East? What did both parties soon begin to do? What name did the new territory get?

§ 211. **Review.** While Franklin Pierce was President what did Stephen A. Douglas persuade Congress to do? What had Congress promised about all that country? When Congress made the new territories of Kansas and Nebraska what right did it give to the people? What happened in Kansas?

§ 212. Who was our fifteenth President? What did Abraham Lincoln and Stephen A. Douglas want to do? What did they agree to do? What did they talk about? What did Douglas say? What did Abraham Lincoln say? Which one of the two was sent to Congress?

§ 213. What is said about John Brown in Kansas? What did he now resolve to do? Tell what happened at Harper's Ferry, Virginia, in 1859. How did most of the people in the North feel about John Brown? Did they intend to try to set the negroes free at the South? What did they want to do? What two states had come into the Union? What third state followed? How many states did that make?

§ 214. Who was elected President in 1860? What did the people of South Carolina resolve to do then? What reason did they give for acting so? Did Abraham Lincoln mean to set the negroes of the South free? What did the South Carolina convention do?

§ 215. What six other states seceded? What four others seceded later? In all, how many states seceded? What were the "border states"? Did any of them secede? By what name did the eleven seceded states call themselves? Whom did they elect president? What did they do about a flag? How did President Buchanan feel?

§ 216. **Review.** While James Buchanan was President what did Abraham Lincoln and Stephen A. Douglas do? What did Mr. Douglas think about the people of Kansas? What did Abraham Lincoln say to that? What did John Brown do at Harper's Ferry, Virginia? What is said about the people of the North? What three states were admitted to the Union? How many did this make in all?

§ 217. Who was our sixteenth President? What did the people of the eleven seceded states now do? On what fort were the stars and stripes still flying? Who defended that fort? What is said about him? What did President Lincoln do? What did Jefferson Davis do? What happened when Major Anderson refused to give up Fort Sumter? What did Major Anderson have to do at last? What is said about the flag?

§ 218. What did President Lincoln do? What did Jefferson Davis do? How large did the Union army finally become? How large did the Confederate army become? What was going on for the next four years? Where was the Union army gathered in 1861? Where was the Confederate army gathered? Where was the first battle fought? What happened? What good lesson did the battle of Bull Run teach the people of the North?

§ 219. What was the first part of the Union plan for carrying on the war? Did the captains of the Union war ships do anything? What was the second part of the Union plan? What was one part of the Union army to do? What was a second part to do? What was a third part to do? Who now took command of the Union army?

§ 220. What is said about the *Merrimac*? What two Union vessels did the *Merrimac* destroy? What Union vessel did the captain of the *Merrimac* set out to destroy the next day? What is said about the *Monitor*? What happened after that fight? What is said about the new iron war ships built by the United States?

§ 221. What is said about Ulysses S. Grant? What did he do when the war for the Union broke out? Where did he have an army in the

winter of 1861? What two forts did he and Commodore Foote take, in the spring of 1862? What terrible battle did General Grant win? What new name did he get? Why? What state did he get possession of? How far south did the Union armies open the Mississippi River?

§ 222. **Review.** What fort did the Confederates take, the first year of the war? What did President Lincoln do then? What great battle was fought in Virginia? Which side was beaten? What did Congress do then? What did the Union commanders begin to do? Tell what their plan was. When was the first battle fought on the water? What did the *Monitor* do? What did General Grant do in the West? What great battle did he fight there? What state did he get possession of? How far south did the Union forces open the Mississippi River?

§ 223. What had the Confederates done at New Orleans? What did Captain Farragut set out to do? Did he do it? Why could not Captain Farragut take Vicksburg? Later on, what was Captain Farragut made?

§ 224. What is said about Colonel Robert E. Lee? What did he become? What did General McClellan now try to do? Did he succeed? What did General Lee try to do? Did he succeed?

§ 225. What great thing did President Lincoln do on New Year's Day, 1863? What is said about the freedmen?

§ 226. **Review.** What did Captain Farragut do in the second year of the war for the Union? What was he made? What did General McClellan try to do? What did General Lee try to do? What did President Lincoln do on New Year's Day, 1863?

§ 227. What great battle was fought in Pennsylvania in the summer of 1863? What happened? Did General Lee ever try to enter Pennsylvania again? What was done at Gettysburg in the autumn? What is said about that burial ground?

§ 228. While the battle of Gettysburg was going on what was happening at the West? What is said about Vicksburg? What happened on the Fourth of July, 1863? What happened a few days later? What is said about the "Father of Waters"?

§ 229. What had the Union war ships done? What had the Union armies done? What did President Lincoln now do? What place did the Union soldiers take in Tennessee? What did the President do for General Grant?

§ 230. **Review.** What happened to Lee in the third year of the war? What place did General Grant take and what river did he open? What did President Lincoln do for General Grant?

§ 231. What did General Grant tell General Sherman? What was General Grant's plan? Do you know how a vise acts?

§ 232. What did General Grant now do? How many generals had tried to take Richmond? Can you name some of them? From what river did General Grant start? What was the Wilderness? What is said about the fighting in the Wilderness? Could General Grant move straight on to Richmond? What did he do?

§ 233. What did General Sherman do in the West? How did the Confederate army try to stop him? Did they stop him?

§ 234. What city in Georgia did General Sherman take? What did the Union soldiers do there? Why? What did General Sherman then

set out to do? Where did Sherman's army arrive by Christmas? What is said about the great vise?

§ 235. What did General Sherman then start to do? How did his army get on? What did General Sherman do after the Union army reached North Carolina?

§ 236. What city did General Grant enter? What did he do there? What happened a few days later? What did the "boys in blue" do for the "boys in gray"? What general now surrendered to General Sherman? What is said about the war? What had it cost the North? What had it cost the South? How many young men had the country lost? What good had the war done? What two new states were admitted while the war was going on? How many did that make in all?

§ 237. **Review.** What did General Grant do in the last year of the war? What did General Sherman do? What city did General Lee give up? What did he do a few days later? What is said about the end of the war?

§ 238. What did Major Anderson do on April 14, 1865? What terrible thing happened on the evening of that day? Who then became seventeenth President of the United States?

§ 239. What is said about President Johnson and Congress? Did Congress remove the President? What did Congress now tell the southern states which had seceded? What two things did those states have to promise? Did they agree to do it? What had happened within five years after the war had ended? What had the United States given the negroes at the South? What happened in South Carolina?

§ 240. How many great pieces of land had the United States got possession of? Can you tell what they were? What was the seventh piece which we bought? What year did we buy it? Did we get a good bargain? What state came into the Union in 1867? How many states did that make?

§ 241. **Review.** What terrible thing happened just after the war for the Union ended? What is said about President Johnson and Congress? What is said about the southern states? What is said about the negroes? What great piece of land did we buy in 1867? What state was admitted to the Union that year? How many did that make in all?

§ 242. Who was our eighteenth President? What great railway was completed in 1869? How long had it taken people to get to California? What is said about a man with an ox team? What is said about the Pacific Railway? What did Congress give to emigrants? What is said about the farms in the far West?

§ 243. What is said about the United States and the weather? What people does that information help?

§ 244. When did the United States keep its hundredth birthday? What was done at Philadelphia? What was the main object of that exhibition? What is said about Philadelphia in 1776? How many states had we then? Where were they? How many states had we in 1876? How far west did the United States extend in 1876? What inventions had the signers of the Declaration of Independence never seen? What state was admitted in 1876? How many did that make in all?

§ 245. **Review.** What great railway was opened while General Grant was President? What did it do for the far West? What is said about the weather bureau? What is said about the hundredth birthday of the United States? What state was admitted to the Union in 1876? How many did that make in all?

§ 246. Who was our nineteenth President? What did he do about the Union soldiers in the South? Were the soldiers ever sent back there?

§ 247. What is said about the mouths of the Mississippi? What is said about vessels leaving and entering that river? What did Captain Eads do?

§ 248. **Review.** What did President Hayes do about the Union soldiers in the South? Was he right? What did Captain Eads do?

§ 249. Who was our twentieth President? What happened to him? Why did the man shoot him? Who became President then?

§ 250. Does the United States employ many people? Can you tell what some of them do? What law did Congress make after President Garfield was killed? Why did they make the law? What does a man have to do now who wants to get work from the United States? What is the intention of the law?

§ 251. What is said about the white people of the South after the war? After a while, what did they begin to do? What is said about the people there now?

§ 252. **Review.** Who was our twentieth President? Who became our twenty-first President after President Garfield was murdered? What new law did Congress pass? What does that law do? What is said about the people of the South?

§ 253. Who was our twenty-second President? What great statue was set up in the harbor of New York? Who gave us that statue? Why? Tell all you can about the statue.

§ 254. How many of our Presidents had died shortly after entering office? Who then became Presidents? What did people begin to ask after President Garfield was murdered? What law did Congress make in 1886? Suppose that the President and Vice President should both die or be removed from office, who would then become President? What good does that do? What important law was passed in 1887? Why was that law passed?

§ 255. **Review.** What grand statue was erected while Grover Cleveland was President? Who gave us that statue? Why? What was the first of two very important laws passed by Congress? What was the second law? What do both these laws do?

§ 256. Who was our twenty-third President? Where is Oklahoma? What does the name mean? What did President Harrison do about Oklahoma in 1889? Tell what happened when the President gave the word. What city did the "boomers" begin to build? What is said about Oklahoma Territory?

§ 257. What six new states were admitted in 1889 and 1890? How many states did that make in all? What is said about our building some new ships of war? What did the people call these ships?

§ 258. **Review.** What is said about Oklahoma Territory? What six new states were admitted in 1889 and 1890? How many did that make in all? What did the United States begin to build?

§ 259. Who was our twenty-fourth President? What great exhibition was opened at Chicago in 1893? What was the object of it? Tell all you can about the exhibition. What vessels could be seen there?

§ 260. What dispute did we settle with England in 1893? What is said about Bering Sea? What did we want to do? What did England say? How was the dispute settled? Have we ever decided any other disputes in the same way? Do you think it is a better way than fighting? What new state did we add to the Union? How many did that make in all? How many stars would it make on our flag? Can you tell how many stripes our flag must have? Can you tell what those stripes stand for? Can you tell how many stars it must have? Can you tell why?

§ 261. **Review.** What was done at Chicago when Grover Cleveland was President for the second time? What dispute did we settle with England? What agreement was made? What new state was admitted? How many did that make in all? How many stars would it make on the flag?

§ 262. Who was our twenty-fifth President? How much of North America did the Spaniards once own? What happened to the Spaniards? Tell how they lost possession of the country. What did they have left at last?

§ 263. How did the king of Spain treat the Cubans? What did the Cubans do? What did President McKinley tell the Spaniards? What war ship did we send to Havana? What happened to her? Do we know now just how the vessel was destroyed?

§ 264. What did President McKinley say then? What did Congress do? What did Congress tell the king of Spain? What did Spain do? What did we do in the spring of 1898? What happened then? Where did we intend to strike Spain? What is said about the people of the Philippines? What did Commodore Dewey do? What was Dewey made later on?

§ 265. What did President McKinley send to Cuba? Who were the "Rough Riders"? Who had command of the "Rough Riders"? Did the "Rough Riders" do any fighting? How did they fight? Who fought most of the battles in Cuba? What battle was fought in the summer of 1898? Tell all you can about it. Where did the Spanish take refuge? What war ships had gone into that harbor?

§ 266. Whose war ships were waiting outside to catch the Spanish vessels? What did some men shout on the *Brooklyn*? What happened then? What prisoners did we take? What did they think we would do with them?

§ 267. When did the war with Spain come to an end? What did the king of Spain do? What is Cuba to-day? What did the king of Spain do with the Philippine Islands? What two islands did he give us? What had we done to the Spanish prisoners? What did they do when they sailed for Spain?

§ 268. What other islands did we get in the Pacific? How far are they from San Francisco? How many pieces or lots of land in all have we added to the United States? Can you name them? What is said about the flag of the United States to-day?

§ 269. How many people did we have in 1790, when Washington was President? How many did we have in 1900? How many more people did we have then than when Washington was President?

§ 270. What is said about a few discontented people in the United States? What did some English sailors once do? Where did they make a settlement? How did they try to live on that island? What happened after a little while? What did they have to do at last? What is said about the young man who shot President McKinley in 1901? Who became our twenty-sixth President?

§ 271. What great work did some of our people complete on the Fourth of July, 1903? What did President Roosevelt do on that day? Can you tell in what direction the message went? Through what countries did it pass? To what place did it come back? How long had it taken for that message to go around the globe? How many miles had it traveled? What kind of a message was it? What was the first country that ever sent a message clear around the earth? What does that mean?

INDEX

KEY TO PRONUNCIATION. — *ā, ē, ī, ō, ū, long*; *ä, é, ê, ð, less prolonged*; *ă, ě, ĩ, ǒ, ů, short*; *ā, ē, ĩ, ō, ū, obscure*; *fār, lāst, fālł, cāre*; *tĕrm*; *fōod, fōot, fŭrl*; *ō as in îdr*; *oi as in oil*; *ow as in cow*; *ch as in chin*; *ġ as in ġet*; *ŷ as in lĩngĕr, lĩnk*; *ng as in sing*; *th as in thin*. The pronunciation of French and Spanish names can be learned best from a teacher or from a good dictionary. In practice most such names occurring in American history are pronounced as in English; e.g. Coronado, Spanish ko-ro-nă'tho, is generally pronounced ko-ro-nă'do.

- Abolitionists, 198.
- Acadia (ă-kă'di-ă) taken, 99.
 named Nova Scotia, 99.
- Adams, John, President, 162.
 John Quincy, President, 193.
 Samuel, of Boston, 120.
- African pirates, war with, 165.
- Alabama admitted, 186.
- Alabama*, Confederate war ship, 251.
- Alaska (ă-lăs'kă) purchased, 274.
 value of, 276.
- Albany, 40, 172, 173.
- Algiers (ăl-jĕrz'), pirates of, 165.
- Alien and Sedition Acts, 163.
- Allen, Ethan, 126.
- Amendments to the Constitution, 151 ;
 note 1, 274.
- America discovered by the Northmen, 2.
 discovered by Columbus, 7.
 continent of, discovered by Cabot, 9.
 how it got its name, 10.
 the Dutch in, 38.
 English explorations in, 16.
 English try to colonize, 17.
 English colonize Virginia, 30.
 French in, 15, 29, 66, 89-97, 98, 99, 100,
 107-110.
 Spaniards in, 14, 16, 18, 294.
 corn found in, 27.
 potatoes and tobacco found in, 18.
 many kinds of people settle in, 49, 204.
 compared to a battle ship, 49.
 animals brought to, 74.
 compared to a magnet, 204.
 Indians of, see Indians.
 colonies planted in, see Colonies.
 See, too, United States.
- "America for Americans," 191.
- Americus Vespuccius, see Vespuccius.
- Amerigo Vespucci, see Vespucci.
- Anderson, Major, 244, 270.
- André (ăn'dră) executed, 144.
- Andros (ăn'dros), Governor, 112-114.
- Animals brought to America, 74.
- Antietam (ăn-tĕ'tăm), battle of, 257.
- Appomattox (ăp'pō-măt'tōks), 268.
- Arbitration of Bering Sea dispute, 292.
- Arizona (ăr-i-zō'nă), 218.
- Arkansas (ăr'kăns-ă') admitted, 201.
- Army, Confederate, 246.
 Continental, 124, 125, 126.
 Union, 245, 246.
 See, too, War.
- Arnold, Benedict, services of, 128, 135.
 turns traitor, 143-145.
- Arthur, Chester A., President, 283.
- Atlanta, battle of, 266.
- Augustine, St. (sănt ă'ġŭs-tĕn'), 16.
 oldest town in the United States, 16.
- Balboa (băl-bō'ă) discovers the Pacific, 14.
- Baltimore, 65, 178.
- Battles, Antietam (ăn-tĕ'tăm) (Civil War),
 257.
 Atlanta (Civil War), 266.
 Baltimore (War of 1812), 178.
 Bennington (Revolution), 135.
 Braddock's defeat (Colonial wars), 104.
 Bull Run (Civil War), 246.
 Bunker Hill (Revolution), 125.
 Camden (Revolution), 142.
 Canadian (War of 1812), 176, 178.
 Chattanooga (chăt'tă-nōō'ġă) (Civil
 War), 263.
 Concord (kōŋk'ŭrd) (Revolution), 124.
 Constitution and *Guerrière* (ġăr-rĭ-
 ăr') (War of 1812), 179.
 Fort Sumter (Civil War), 243.
 Gettysburg (Civil War), 259.
 Indian, see War.

- Battles, *Kearsarge* (kēr' särj) and *Alabama* (Civil War), 251.
 King's Mountain (Revolution), 142.
 Lake Champlain (War of 1812), 181.
 Lake Erie (War of 1812), 180.
Leopard and *Chesapeake*, 172.
 Lexington (Revolution), 122.
 Long Island (Revolution), 132.
 Louisburg (Colonial wars), 100.
 Manila (ma-nīl'ā) (war with Spain), 296.
 Mexican War, 215.
Monitor and *Merrimac* (Civil War), 249.
 Monmouth (Revolution), 138.
 New Orleans (ör'le-āuz) (War of 1812), 182.
 New Orleans (Civil War), 256.
 North and South Carolina (Revolution), 145.
 Pittsburg Landing (Civil War), 252.
 Princeton (Revolution), 133.
 Quebec (kwε-bēk') (Colonial wars), 107.
 Quebec (Revolution), 128.
 Richmond, around (Civil War), 257.
 Santiago (sān-tē-ā'gō) (war with Spain), 297, 298.
 Saratoga (Revolution), 135.
 Sumter, Fort (Civil War), 243.
 Ticonderoga (ti-kōn'der-ō'gā) (Revolution), 126.
 Tippecanoe (Indian wars), 175.
 Trenton (Revolution), 132.
 Vicksburg (Civil War), 261.
 Wilderness (Civil War), 264.
 Yorktown (Revolution), 146.
 See, 100, War.
- Battle ship, America compared to a, 49, 50.
 Beauregard (bō'rēh-gard'), General, 244;
 note 1, 246.
 Bees brought to America, 75.
 Bell, Professor, 210.
 Bennington, battle of, 135.
 Bering (bē'ring) Sea dispute settled, 292.
 Bicycle, the first, 174.
 "Bleeding Kansas," 236.
 Blockade of southern ports, 248, 262.
 Books read by the colonists, 76.
 Boone, Daniel, 157.
 Border states, the, 242.
 Boston founded, 56.
 tea destroyed in, 120.
 port of, closed, 120.
 British cooped up in, 124.
 British driven out of, 128.
- Bounty paid to colonists by the king, 115.
 Braddock's defeat, 102-104.
 Brattleboro, Vermont, 58.
 Brown, John, attempts to liberate slaves,
 239, 243.
 execution of, 240.
 Buchanan (būk-an'ān), James, President,
 237.
 Buffalo, 202.
 "Buffalo Bill," 228, 297.
 Bull Run, battle of, 246, 247.
 Bunker Hill, battle of, 125.
 Burgoyne's defeat, 135.
 Burr, Aaron, shoots Hamilton, 169.
 his western plot, 169.
 arrested and tried for treason, 170.
- Cabin, building a log, 72.
 Cabinet, Washington selects his, 153.
 meaning of the word, note, 153.
 Cabot discovers continent of America, 9, 10.
 Calhoun, John C., advocates nullification,
 200.
 believes in slavery, 230.
 fears disunion, 232.
 California added to United States, 218.
 gold discovered in, 220.
 the rush of gold seekers to, 220.
 stage, pony express, telegraph, and
 railway to, 226-229.
 dispute over admission of, 230.
 admitted, 233.
- Camden, battle of, 142.
 Canada, settled by the French, 29.
 the French lose, 108, 109.
 Canal, the Erie, 193.
 Capitol at Washington, 164, 178.
 Carver, Governor John, 52.
 Catholic church, the first in America, 64.
 Catholic emigrants to Maryland, 63.
 Catholic missionaries in Canada, 89.
 Catholics grant religious liberty, 64.
 Census, the first, 156.
 of 1900, 156.
 Charleston, South Carolina, 66, 142, 241.
 Charter, meaning of word, 111.
 the Connecticut, saved, 112.
 Charter Oak, the, 113.
 Charters, the king's to the colonists, 111,
 112.
 what they promised, 111, 118.
 Chattanooga (chāt'tā-nōō'gā), battle of, 263.
 Chicago, growth of, 203.
 exhibition at, 290.
 Children, first come to America, 52.
 helpful in the colonies, 75.

- Cincinnati, 158.
 City, the oldest in the United States, 16.
 Civil Service Reform Act, 283.
 Civil War, see War.
 Clark, Captain George Rogers, 138.
 Clark and Lewis go to the Pacific, 169.
 Clay, Henry, the "peacemaker," 187, 188.
 and Missouri Compromise, 186-188.
 and national road, 189, 190.
 and tariff dispute in South Carolina, 201.
 his compromise measures of 1850, 231-233.
 Cleveland, Grover, President, 285, 290.
 Coal and iron in Pennsylvania, 44.
 Cody, Colonel W. F., 228.
 College, Harvard, founded, 57.
 Colonies, the English in Virginia, 17, 18.
 first permanent English, 29.
 see names of the thirteen.
 charters of the, 111, 112.
 general review of the American, 70.
 grow like a grove of oaks, 70.
 how the first settlers lived in the, 72-80.
 George the Third taxes the, 117, 118.
 declare themselves independent, 129.
 Colonists become landowners, 33.
 raise tobacco, 33-35.
 buy slaves, 34.
 get white laborers, 35.
 make laws, 35, 36, 78, 112.
 and Indians, see Indians.
 how they lived, 72-80.
 what they learned to do, 77.
 how they kept good order, 78.
 their books and schools, 48, 57, 76, 77.
 how they got on in the world, 78.
 how the rich lived, 79.
 what they all agreed in, 80.
 cling to their charter rights, 111, 112, 118.
 English trade laws and the, 114, 115.
 generally contented, 115.
 George the Third taxes the, 117-121.
 refuse to pay taxes, 121.
 resolve not to buy English goods, 120.
 resolve to stand by each other, 121.
 make ready to fight, 121, 122.
 fight for their rights, 124.
 declare themselves independent, 129.
 Colorado admitted, 280.
 gold found in, 226.
 Columbia River named, 169.
 Columbus plans a voyage to the West, 4.
 his voyage, 5-7.
 discovers America, 7, 8.
 his later voyages, 8, 9.
 Columbus, what he actually found, 9.
 models of his ships at Chicago, 292.
 Compromise, the Missouri, 186-188, 233.
 tariff, Clay's, 201.
 measures of 1850, 231-233.
 Concord (kõng'urd), battle of, 124.
 Confederate States organized, 242.
 Congress, first Continental meets, 121.
 declares the colonies independent, 129.
 at close of the Revolution, 149.
 action of, in the Civil War, 247.
 Connecticut (kõn-nět'ĩ-küt), colony of, 58-60, 63, 82.
 charter hidden, 112, 113.
 Constitution, the, framed and adopted, 150, 151.
 important provisions of the, 150, 151.
 amendments to the, 151.
 value of the, 151.
Constitution built, 163.
 captures the *Guerrière* (gãr-ř-ãr'), 179, 180.
 Continental army formed, 124.
 coops up the British in Boston, 124, 125.
 Washington takes command of, 126.
 drives the British out of Boston, 128, 129.
 See the Revolution.
 Corn first found in America, 27.
 Indians teach settlers to raise, 27, 73.
 great value of, 27.
 Cornwallis, Lord, 132, 142, 145, 146, 147.
 Coronado (ko-ro-nã'do) explores the West, 14.
 Cotton growing at the South, 158, 159, 160, 285.
 gin invented, 159, 160.
 gin, effects of the, 160.
 "Cotton is king," 160.
 Cotton mills at the South, 285.
 Court, United States Supreme, organized, 154.
 decision respecting slavery, note, 238.
 Cowboys, 297.
 Cuba, people of, fight Spain, 295.
 United States declares independent, 296.
 See War with Spain.
 Davis, Jefferson, in the Mexican War, 216.
 President of Confederate States, 242.
 Debate between Douglas and Lincoln, 237-239.
 Debt, keep out of, 204.
 Debt of United States at close of Revolution, paid, 155.
 Declaration of Independence, 129, 153.

- Deerfield burned, 99.
 Delaware, first settlement in, 46.
 bought by William Penn, 46.
 Delaware, Washington crosses the, 132.
 Denver, 226.
 De Soto discovers the Mississippi, 15.
 Detroit, 86, 160.
 surrendered by Hull, 176, 177.
 Dewey, Admiral, 297.
 Douglas, Stephen A., and Kansas-Nebraska Bill, 233-235.
 debates with Lincoln, 237-239.
 Drake, Sir Francis, in California and Oregon, 16.
 Duquesne (dü'kän'), Fort, 104.
 Dustin, Mrs., and the Indians, 98, 99.
 Dutch, the, and the Pilgrims, 50.
 a very enterprising people, 39.
 in New Netherland, 38-41.
 buy Manhattan Island, 38, 39.
 patroons, 39.
 give up New Netherland, 41.
 Eads (eedz), Capt. J. B., and the Mississippi, 282.
 Education in the colonies, 48, 57, 76.
 Election of Presidents, see names of Presidents.
 Electricity, see Telegraph and Telephone.
 Electric Lights and Street Cars, 292.
 Emancipation of the slaves, 257.
 Embargo Act, 172.
 Emigrants to Virginia, 30.
 some sell themselves to pay passage, 48, 49.
 women go to Virginia, 34.
 all loved liberty, 49.
 go West, 157, 158, 188-190, 191, 194, 201, 202, 220-226, 277.
 See, too, Immigrants.
 England claimed part of America, 9, 10.
 plants colonies in America, 29.
 grants charters to colonists, 111, 112.
 how ruled America, 111-116.
 taxes the colonists, 117-120.
 war with, see Revolution.
 tries to make peace, 138.
 recognizes the independence of the United States, 147.
 treaty of peace with, 147.
 Jay's treaty with, 160, 161.
 holds forts after the Revolution, 160.
 refuses to let us trade with France, 161.
 searches American ships, 171.
 seizes American sailors, 172.
 War of 1812 with, see War.
 England, Bering Sea dispute settled, 292.
 and America now good friends, 183.
 "Era of Good Feeling," 184, 185.
 Ericson (ér'ik-sön), Leif, discovers Vinland, 2, 3.
 Erie Canal constructed, 193.
 Exhibition, Centennial, at Philadelphia, 279.
 Columbian at Chicago, 290.
 Louisiana Purchase at St. Louis, 303.
 Express, pony, to California, 225-227.
 Farms, western, 201, 202, 277.
 Farragut, Admiral, 256.
 Fillmore, Millard, President, 233.
 Fire, how the colonists kindled a, 74.
 how the Indians made a, 23.
 Flag, history of the American, note 2, 135; 136.
 our, at Saratoga, 135.
 the "Star-Spangled Banner," 179.
 the, on Fort Sumter, 245, 270.
 the Confederate, 242, 243.
 number of stars on now, 293.
 Flax raised in Londonderry, 58.
 Flint and steel to strike fire, 74.
 Florida discovered by Spaniards, 14.
 Spaniards drive the French from, 15.
 we buy, 185.
 Indian war in, 185.
 admitted, 210.
 Foote, Commodore, 252.
 Fort Donelson, 252.
 Duquesne (dü'kän'), 104, 105.
 Henry, 252.
 McHenry, 178.
 Pitt, 105.
 Sumter, 244, 245, 272.
 Ticonderoga (ti-kön'der-ō'gä), 126.
 Forts, French colonial, 100-102, 104.
 obtained by Jay treaty, 161.
 Confederates seize United States', 243.
 France claims the Louisiana Country, 94-97.
 builds forts, 100-102.
 cedes Louisiana to Spain, 108.
 loses Canada and the West, 107-109.
 resolves to help the United States, 136, 142.
 we pay debt to, 155.
 trouble with, 156, 157, 162, 163.
 demands money of us, 162, 163.
 war with, 163.
 seizes our ships, 171.
 Franklin, Benjamin, 115.
 and the Constitution, 150, 151.
 opposed to slavery, 160.
 "Freedmen," the, 259.

- "Freedmen," see Negroes.
 French, the, in Florida, 15.
 in Canada, 29, 89.
 on the Mississippi, 91-97.
 forts, 100-102.
 and Indian wars, 98-109.
 Fulton, Robert, and the steamboat, 172.

 "Gadsden (gădz'dĕn) Purchase," the, 219.
 Gage, General (Revolution), 121-126.
 Garfield, James A., President, 283.
 Garrison, William Lloyd (loid), 198, 199.
 George the Third and America, 117-120,
 138, 147.
 Georgia, colony of, 67-69.
 Gettysburg, battle of, 259.
 soldiers' burial ground at, 260.
 Gold found in California, 220-224.
 found in Colorado (kôl'ô-ră'dô), 226.
 "Good times have come," 185.
 Government by the king, 111-116.
 town meeting, 54, 55.
 Puritan, 57.
 Quaker, 43, 47, 48.
 in Virginia, 35, 36.
 at close of the Revolution, 149.
 the people frame a new, 149-151.
 See Constitution and Laws.
 Grant, Ulysses S., in the Mexican War, 216.
 at beginning of the Civil War, 251-253.
 "Unconditional Surrender" Grant, 252.
 takes Vicksburg, 261, 262.
 made General in Chief, 263.
 and Sherman's plan, 264.
 battles of the Wilderness, 264, 265.
 takes Richmond, 268.
 Lee surrenders to, 268.
 President, 276.
 Gray, Captain Robert, 169.
 Green Bay, Wisconsin, 91, 92.
 Greene, General (Revolution), 145.
 Greenland, the Northmen in, 1, 2.
 Guthrie, 289.
 Guam (gŭăm), 299.

 Hale, Captain Nathan, executed, 130.
 Hamilton, Alexander, 153, 154, 169.
 "Hard times," what they taught us, 203,
 204.
 Harper's Ferry, Virginia, 240.
 Harrison, Benjamin, President, 288.
 General William Henry, 175, 181.
 General William Henry, President, 207.
 death of, 207.
 Hayes, Rutherford B., President, 281.
 Henry, Patrick, "We must fight!" 121.

 Hooker, Rev. Thomas, 59.
 Houses, building the first, 72.
 Houston, Sam, 211.
 Howe, General (Revolution), 128, 132, 134.
 Hudson, Captain Henry, 37.
 Hudson River, name of, 38.
 Huguenots (hŭ'gĕ-nôts) in American History, 66.
 Hull, General William (War of 1812), 176,
 177.
 Hull, Commodore Isaac (War of 1812), 179,
 180.
 Hutchinson, Governor, a Loyalist, 131.

 Iceland, Northmen in, 1, 2.
 Idaho (i'dă-hô) admitted, 289.
 Illinois admitted, 186.
 Immigrants in Pennsylvania, 48, 49.
 gave America strength, 49.
 modern, 204-206.
 number coming now, 206.
 laws concerning, 206.
 See, too, Emigrants.
 Impeachment of President Johnson, 272.
 Impressment of American sailors, 171, 172.
 Independence, Declaration of, 129, 153.
 Indians admitted, 184.
 Indians, American, origin of the name, 8.
 how they lived, 21, 25.
 their trails, 24, 25.
 number of, 25.
 their relations with the Whites, 25-27.
 wars of, see War.
 what they taught the Whites, 27, 53.
 make treaties with Whites, 48-53.
 raise corn, 27.
 sell land to the Whites, 38, 48, 81.
 how they cleared land, 73.
 return children to their parents, 86, 87.
 Roger Williams defends the, 60.
 attack western settlers, 158, 201.
 sold as slaves, 84.
 how they fought, 83.
 and the priests in Canada, 89.
 attack overland stage, 228.
 and the steamboat, 173.
 and the locomotive, 228, 229.
 See, too, "King Philip" and Tecumseh.
 Indies, Columbus sails for the, 4-9.
 Indigo raised in South Carolina, 67.
 Inventions, American, 173, 174, 202, 207-
 209, 279, 280.
 Iowa (i'ôwa) admitted, 219.
 Iron and coal mines, 44.
 Iron and steel manufactures, 105, 114,
 285.

- Jackson, General Andrew, in Florida, 185.
at battle of New Orleans, 182, 183.
President, 198.
- Jamestown, Virginia, settled, 30.
- Jay, John, 154, 160, 161.
- Jefferson, Thomas, wrote Declaration of Independence, 153.
opposed to slavery, 160.
President, 164.
- Johnson, Andrew, President, 272.
- Johnston, General, surrender of, 269.
- Joliet (jō'le-ët) and Father Marquette (mär'-kët'), 90-92.
- Jones, Captain Paul (Revolution), 139.
- Kansas, emigration to, 225, 235, 236.
civil war in, 233, 236.
called "Bleeding Kansas," 236.
admitted, 240.
- Kansas-Nebraska Act, 233, 234.
- Kearsarge* (kēr'särj) and *Alabama*, battle of, 251.
- Kentucky Country, emigration to the, 157.
- Kentucky and Virginia Resolutions, 163.
- Kentucky admitted, 161.
- King of England, how he ruled America, 111-116.
charters granted by, 111, 112.
See, too, England.
- "King Philip's" War, 82-85.
wife and son sold as slaves, 84.
- Kings Mountain, battle of, 142.
- Knox, General Henry, 154.
- Laborers, white, sold in Virginia, 35.
sold in Pennsylvania, 49.
- Lafayette (lä'fä'yët') in the Revolution, 134, 146.
visits the United States, 192.
what the United States did for, 193.
- Land, Virginians become owners of, 33.
colonists buy of the Indians, 38, 48, 62, 81.
how the king granted, 111.
the French claim Louisiana, 94-97.
war between the English and French for, 98-109.
the French lose all their American, 108, 109.
England's claim to, in 1763, 109.
Spain's loss of American, 294, 295.
added to the United States (1803-1898), 300.
cheap at the West, 201, 202.
the rush for, in Oklahoma, 288.
railways opened up at the West, 276.
- La Salle (lä säl') on the Mississippi, 92-97.
- Laws, colonists help make (1619), 35, 36.
colonists take part in making, 112.
English Navigation and Trade, 114, 115.
- Alien and Sedition Acts, 163.
Embargo Act, 172.
Missouri Compromise Act, 188.
Fugitive Slave Act, 231.
Compromise Measures of 1850, 231-233.
Kansas-Nebraska Act, 233, 234.
Immigrant, 206.
Civil Service Reform, 283, 284.
Presidential Succession Act, 287.
Presidential Election Act, 288.
See, too, Nullification and Tariff.
- Lee, Robert E., in Mexican War, 216.
General, in the Civil War, 256, 257, 259, 264, 268, 270.
surrender of, 268, 270.
- Leif Ericson, see Ericson.
- Leopard* and *Chesapeake*, battle of, 172.
- Lewis and Clark's exploring expedition, 167, 168, 214.
- Lexington, battle of, 122, 124.
- Liberator*, *The*, Garrison publishes, 198.
- Liberty, religious, in America, 47, 62, 64.
statue of, 285.
- Lincoln, Abraham, goes to New Orleans in a flatboat, 190.
what he thought of slavery, 231, 238, 241.
debates with Douglas, 237-239.
elected President, 240, 241.
President, 241.
and Fort Sumter, 245.
sets the slaves free, 257.
puts General Grant in chief command, 263.
murdered, 272.
- Linen first made in America, 58.
- Liquor, use of, in early times, 196.
- Log cabin, building a, 73.
life in, 74.
- London Company, 30, 35.
- Londonderry, New Hampshire, 58.
- Longfellow quoted, 80.
- Long Island, battle of, 132.
- Louisburg taken, 100.
- Louisiana Country named, 94.
claimed for France, 94.
immense size of, 94-97.
ceded to Spain, 109.
sold to the United States, 166, 167.
how far it extended, 167.
state of, admitted, 184.
- Loyalists or Tories in the Revolution, 131.

- McClellan, General, 249, 257.
 Macdonough, Commodore, 181.
 Mackinaw (māk'ī-nā), 90.
 McKinley, William, President, 294.
 murdered, 304.
 Madison, James, President, 175.
 Mail, carrying the, to California, 226.
 Maine, settlement of, 57, 58.
 admitted, 188.
Maine, destruction of the, 295.
 Manila (mā-nī'l'ā), battle of, 296, 297.
 Manhattan Island, purchase of, 38, 39.
 given up to the English, 41.
 value of, to-day, 39.
 Manufactures, colonial, 105, 114.
 cotton, 160.
 iron and steel, 105.
 at the South, 289.
 March to the sea, Sherman's, 266, 267.
 Marietta, Ohio, 158.
 Marion (mār'e-on), General, 66, 142.
 Marquette (mār'kēt'), Father, 90, 91.
 Maryland colonized by Catholics, 64.
 first Catholic church in, 64.
 religious liberty in, 64.
 Massachusetts settled by Puritans, 55, 56.
 how governed, 57.
 who could vote in, 57.
 education in, 57.
 and the Quakers, 56.
 and Roger Williams, 60.
 "King Philip's" War in, 82-85.
 Massasoit (mās'sa-soit'), Indian chief, 52,
 54, 61, 83.
 Matches, none in early times, 74, 280.
Mayflower, the, 52, 53.
 Mexico, the Spaniards in, 14.
 the Spaniards lose, 295.
 war with, 212, 215.
 land obtained from, 218.
 Michigan admitted, 201.
 Milwaukee, 202.
 Mines of coal and iron, 44.
 Minnesota admitted, 240.
 "Minutemen" in the Revolution, 122.
 Mississippi, the, discovered, 15.
 the French on the, 90-97.
 trade on the, 190.
 closed by the Confederates, 243, 254.
 opened by Union forces, 262.
 chief mouth of, deepened, 281, 282.
 Mississippi admitted, 186.
 Missouri asks to be admitted, 186.
 dispute in Congress over, 186-188.
 what Henry Clay said, 187, 188.
 Compromise, the, 188.
 Missouri admitted, 188.
 Mobile (mō-bēl') founded, 94.
 Money, paper, in the Revolution, 133.
 Robert Morris raises, for Washington,
 133.
 borrowed from France, 136, 155.
 Government's need of, 149, 154.
 paid back to France, 155.
 demanded by France, 162.
 first coined by United States, 155.
 raised by first tariff, 154.
Monitor and *Merrimac*, battle of, 249.
 Monmouth, battle of, 138.
 Monroe, James, President, 184.
 "Monroe Doctrine," the, 191, 192.
 Montana (mōn-tā'nā) admitted, 289.
 Montcalm (mōn'käl'm'), General, 106-108.
 Mormons emigrate to Utah, 224.
 Morris, Robert, raises money for Wash-
 ington, 133.
 Morse, Professor, invents the telegraph,
 207, 208.
 Mutineers (mū'ti-nērz'), story of the, 302, 304.
 National Road, the, 188-190.
 Navy, American, in the Revolution, 139.
 new ships built (1797), 163.
 punishes the African pirates, 166.
 first flag of, raised, 139.
 Leopard and *Chesapeake*, 172.
 in War of 1812, 178, 179-181.
 the *Constitution* ("Old Ironsides"),
 163, 180.
 in the Civil War, 248, 249, 251, 262, 263.
 takes New Orleans, 256.
 our new, 290.
 destruction of the *Maine*, 295, 296.
 in war with Spain, 296, 297, 298.
 Nebraska, emigration to, 225.
 admitted, 276.
 Nebraska-Kansas Act, the, 233, 234.
 Negro slaves sold in Virginia (1619), 34.
 set free (1863), 257, 258.
 freed in Union army, 259.
 freed at the South, 272, 274.
 freed, obtain right to vote, 274.
 freed, make trouble, 274.
 labor at the South now, 284, 285.
 Negroes, see Slavery, Freedmen.
 Nevada (ne-vā'dā) admitted, 270.
 New Amsterdam (New York City), 39, 41.
 New England, settlement of, 50.
 New Hampshire settled, 57.
 linen made there, 58.
 New Jersey, settlement of, 42.
 bought by Quakers, 42.

- New Jersey, Indians and Whites in, 42.
 well governed, 43.
 no poverty in, 43.
- New Mexico annexed, 218.
- New Netherland (New York), 37-41.
- New Orleans (ōr'le-anz) settled, 94.
 bought by the United States, 166.
 battle of (War of 1812), 182.
 taken by Farragut (1862), 256.
 trade of, 190, 281, 282.
 what Captain Eads (eedz) did for, 282.
- Newspaper, first colonial, 77.
 Garrison's *The Liberator*, 198.
- New York named, 41.
 See, too, New Netherland.
- New York City named, 41.
 value of, to-day, 39.
 once capital of the United States, 153.
 Washington inaugurated there, 153.
- North Carolina settled, 65-67.
 chief products of, 67.
- North Dakota (dā-kō'tā) admitted, 289.
- Northmen, voyages of the, 1-3.
 discover America, 2-4.
 Lief Ericson (lif ēr'ik-son), 2-4.
 and Vinland, 2, 3.
 names of, seen in America now, 3.
 what they have done for America, 3.
 model of a vessel of the, 292.
- Nullification, note 1, 200.
- Ocean, Paul Jones on the, 139.
 America gets her share of the, 139.
- Oglethorpe (ō'g'l-thorp), General, 67.
- Ohio, first settlements in, 158.
 admitted, 166.
- Ohio River, trade on the, 190, 191.
 emigrants on the, 190, 191.
- Oklahoma (ōk-lā-hō'mā) opened, 288, 289.
 the rush for, 288, 289.
- "Old Colony," or Plymouth Colony, 56.
- "Old Hickory" (General Jackson), 198.
- "Old Ironsides" (the *Constitution*), 180.
- Omaha (ō'mā-hā'), 226.
- Oregon, Sir Francis Drake in, 16.
 our claim to, 169, 213, 214.
 how we got, 214.
 emigration to, 224.
 admitted, 240.
 See, too, Captain Robert Gray and
 Lewis and Clark.
- Overland stage to California, 228.
- Pacific Ocean, discovery of the, 14.
- Pacific Railway, the first, 228, 276.
 railways, five, 229.
- Pakenham (pāk'en-am), General, 182.
- Paper money in the Revolution, 133.
- Parliament, the English, note 1, 118.
- Patriots and Tories in the Revolution, 130,
 131.
- Patroons (pā-trōonz'), Dutch, 39, 40.
- Peace, treaties of, see Treaties.
- Penn, William, and New Jersey, 42.
 obtains Pennsylvania, 44.
 buys Delaware, 46.
 founds Philadelphia, 46.
 his dealings with the Indians, 48.
- Pennsylvania granted to Penn, 44.
 settlement of, 45, 46.
 coal and iron in, 44.
 many emigrants go to, 48-50.
 religious liberty in, 47.
 schools in, 48.
 white laborers sold in, 49.
- Pepperrell, Colonel William, 100.
 created Sir William, 100.
- Pequot (pē'kwōt) War, see War.
- Perry, Commodore (War of 1812), 180, 181
- Philadelphia founded by Penn, 46, 47.
 the Continental Congress in, 121, 126,
 129.
 taken by General Howe, 134.
 the capital of the United States, 134.
 the British abandon, 138.
 exhibition at (1876), 279.
- Philippines (fil'ip-ins), we buy the, 299.
 "Philip's, King," War, see War.
- Pierce, Franklin, President, 233.
- Pilgrims, the, in England and Holland, 50
 sail for America, 50-52.
 arrive at Cape Cod, 52.
 sign compact, 52.
 land on Plymouth Rock, 52.
 make a treaty with the Indians, 53.
 keep Thanksgiving, 54.
 hold town meetings, 54.
- Pillory and stocks, 78.
- Pirates, African, war with, see War.
- Pitt, William, 104, 105.
 Fort Pitt named for, 105.
- Pittsburg founded, 105.
 noted for iron and steel works, 105.
- Pittsburg Landing, battle of, 252.
- Plymouth Colony, 52.
 joined to Massachusetts, 56.
 See, too, Pilgrims.
- Plymouth Company, 30.
- Plymouth Rock, 52.
- Pocahontas (po-ka-hōn'tās), 31, 32, 33.
- Polk, James K., President, 213.
- Pontiac's (pōn'ti-āk's) War, see War.

- Pony express to California, 226, 227.
 Population of the United States (1790), 156.
 (1900), 156, 302.
 Portland, Maine, 58.
 Portsmouth, New Hampshire, 57.
 Potatoes found in Virginia, 18.
 sent to Ireland, 18.
 Powhatan (pow-hā-tān'), 31.
 President, the Constitution gives us a, 150.
 Presidential Election Act, 287, 288.
 Succession Act, 286, 287.
 Press, printing, the first, 77.
 Princeton, battle of, 133.
 Prisoners, our Spanish, 299.
 Protective tariff, see Tariff.
 Providence, settlement of, 62.
 Provincetown, 52.
 Puritans, why so called, 56.
 come to Massachusetts, 56.
 settle Boston, 56.
 what they believed, 55, 56.
 and the Quakers, 56.
 and Roger Williams, 57, 60.
 how they governed Massachusetts, 57.
 their schools and college, 57.
- Quakers buy New Jersey, 42.
 the, and the Indians, 42, 43, 48.
 how they governed New Jersey, 43.
 who they were, 44.
 what they believed, 44, 45.
 persecuted in England, 45.
 come to Pennsylvania, 45.
 build Philadelphia, 46, 47.
 their laws, 47, 48.
 their schools, 48.
 establish religious liberty, 47.
 in Massachusetts, 56.
- Quebec (kwē-bēk') settled, 29.
 battle of, 107, 108.
 taken by the English, 107-109.
 Americans attack (Revolution), 128.
- Railway or railroad, the first, 194-196.
 the first Pacific, 228, 276.
- Railways, five Pacific, 229.
 electric, 292.
 length of, in United States, 196.
- Raleigh (raw'li), Sir Walter, 17, 18.
 Reaping machines, 202.
 Reconstruction of seceded states, 272.
 Redemptors, note 1, 49.
 Reform, temperance, 196, 197.
 Religious liberty in Pennsylvania, 47.
 in Maryland, 64.
 in Rhode Island, 62.
- Resolutions, Kentucky and Virginia, 163.
 Revere (rē-veer'), Paul, 66, 122.
 Revolution, origin of the, 117-124.
 begins, 124.
 first object of the, 129.
 becomes a war for independence, 129.
 Patriots and Tories in the, 130.
 paper money of the, 133.
 battles of the, see Battles.
 France sends us help in the, 136, 138.
 end of the, 147, 148.
 United States at the end of the, 149-151.
 debt of the, paid, 155.
 See Washington, Greene, Arnold.
- Rhode Island settled, 62.
 religious liberty in, 62.
 Providence, 62.
- Rice in South Carolina, 67.
- Rich, the, how they lived in the colonies,
 79, 80.
- Richmond, capital of Confederate States,
 246.
 battles around, 257.
 attempts to take, 246, 257, 264, 265.
 taken by Union forces, 268.
- Road, the National, 188-190.
- Roads, in colonial times, 24.
- Roosevelt, Theodore, in war with Spain,
 297, 298.
 President, 304.
 sends telegram around the world, 304-
 306.
- "Rough Riders," the, in war with Spain,
 297.
- Sailors seized by pirates, 165.
 seized by the British, 172.
- St. Augustine (sānt a'gūs-tēn') founded, 16.
 the oldest town in the United States, 16.
- St. Louis in 1804, 168.
 exhibition at, 303.
- Salem settled, 55.
- Salt Lake City, 225.
- Samoset (sām'o-set), 53.
- Sampson, Admiral, 298.
- San Francisco, 220, 222.
- Santiago (sān-tē-ā'gō), battle of, 297, 298.
- Savannah, 68, 267.
- Schenectady (skē-nēk'tā-dē), 98.
- Schley (schlā), Admiral, 298.
- Schools, public, 57.
- Scott, General, in Mexican War, 216.
 in Civil War, note 1, 246.
- Search of American vessels, 171, 172, 176,
 183.
- Secession, Garrison advocated, 199.

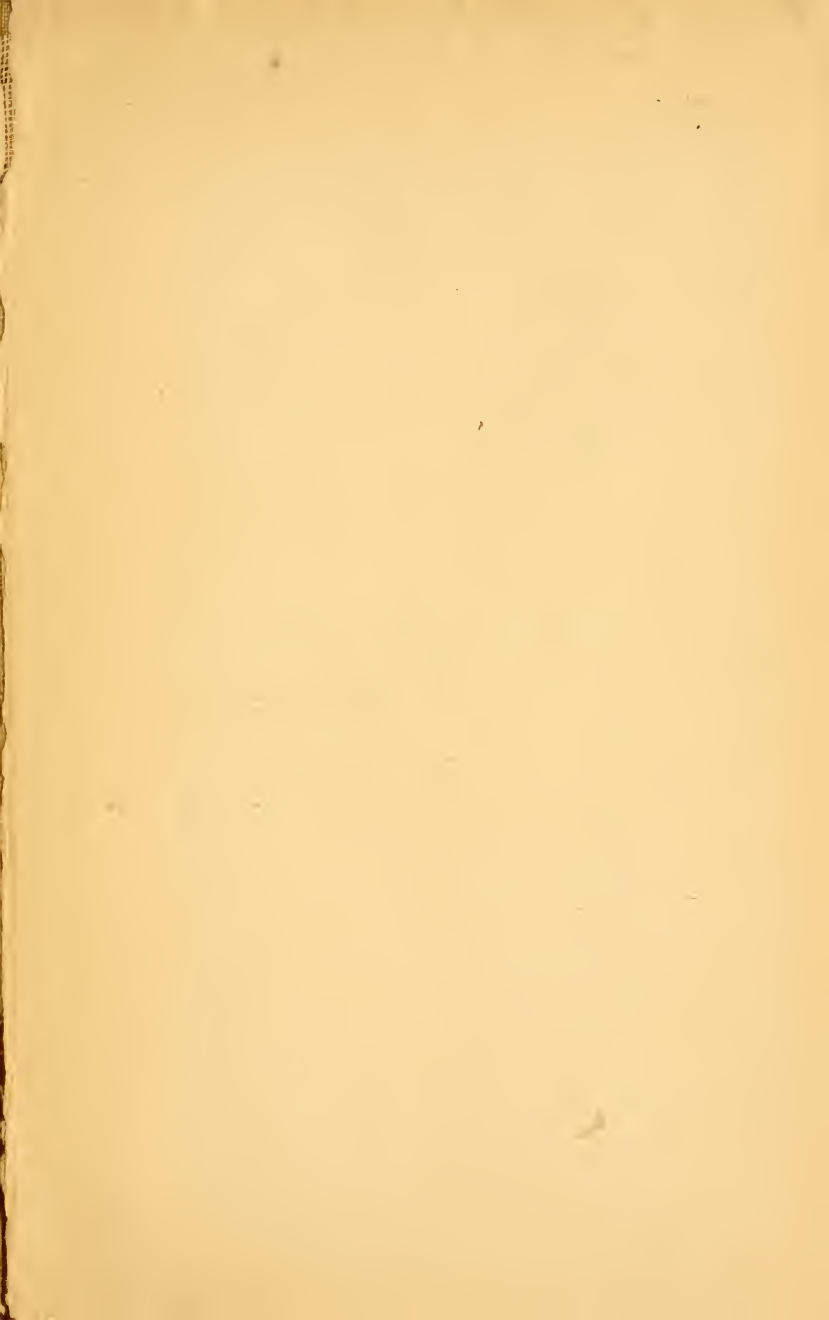
- Secession, South Carolina threatens, 200.
 of South Carolina, 241, 242.
 of ten other states, 242.
 See, too, Reconstruction.
- Settlers, how the first lived, 72-80.
- Sherman, General, 264, 265.
 takes Atlanta, 266.
 marches to the sea, 266.
 goes North, 267, 268.
 Johnston surrenders to, 269.
- Ships, American, searched, 171, 172, 176, 183.
- Silk, American, 68.
- Slavery begins in Virginia, 34.
 in the colonies, 34, 35, 79, 80.
 effect of the cotton gin on, 160.
 Washington and Jefferson against, 160.
 Franklin against, 160.
 disputes about, 186-188, 210-212, 237-239.
 and the Missouri Compromise, 186-188.
 Garrison condemns, 198, 199.
 and annexation of Texas, 210-212.
 Calhoun believed in, 230, 231.
 how Lincoln felt about, 231, 238, 241.
 and admission of California, 230-233.
 and Compromise Measures of 1850, 231, 232.
 and Fugitive Slave Act, 231, 239, 240.
 and Kansas-Nebraska Act, 233, 234.
 Fight in Kansas over, 234-236.
 decision of Supreme Court on (note), 238.
 debate by Lincoln and Douglas on, 237-239.
 John Brown tries to destroy, 239, 240.
 causes secession of slave states, 241, 242.
 Lincoln emancipates the slaves, 257, 258.
 the Civil War destroys, 270.
 destruction of, helps the South, 284, 285.
 See, too, Freedmen and Negroes.
- Smith, Captain John, 31, 32.
- South, the, after the Civil War, 269, 272, 281, 284-288.
 growth of the, since the Civil War, 284, 285.
- South Carolina settled, 65, 66.
 Huguenots (hū'gē-nōts) in, 66.
 products of, 67.
 resists the tariff, 200.
 threatens to secede, 200.
 secedes, 241, 242.
 fires on Fort Sumter, 244.
- South Dakota (dā-kō'tā) admitted, 289.
- Spain and the Louisiana Country, 108, 109.
- Spain loses her American possessions, 294, 295.
 the Cubans fight, 295.
 war with, see War.
- Spaniards discover the Pacific, 14.
 discover Florida, 14.
 conquer Mexico, 14.
 explore parts of America, 14.
 build St. Augustine (sānt ā'gūs-tēn'), 15, 16.
 discover the Mississippi, 15.
 hold America in 1600, 18.
- Spanish prisoners, 299.
- Stagecoaches, 76, 228.
- Stamp Act, 118, 119.
- Standish, Captain Myles, 54.
- Stark, Colonel Johu, 135.
- "Stars and Bars," 242, 243, 244.
- "Stars and Stripes," see Flag.
- Stars, number of, on our flag, 293.
- States, present number of, 293.
- Statue of Liberty, 285, 286.
- Steamboat, Fulton's, 172.
 in the West, 173.
- Steamship, the first, 174.
- Steamships, regular lines of, 205.
- Steel and iron works, 105.
- Stocks and pillory, 78.
- Stuyvesant (sti've-sant), Governor, 40, 41.
- Sumter, General (Revolution), 142.
- Sumter, Fort, battle of, 243, 244.
- Sutter (sut'er), Captain, 220.
- Tar, pitch, and turpentine, 67, 115.
- Tariff, the first, 154.
 South Carolina resists the, 200, 201.
- Tax, the king levies a, 117.
 colonists refuse to pay, 118, 119.
 stamp, 118, 119.
 on tea, 119, 120.
 states levy, on each other, 149.
 Congress raises money by (tariff), 154.
 South Carolina resists (tariff), 200, 201.
- Taylor, General Zachary (Mexican War), 216.
 President, 230.
 death of, 233.
- Tea, colonists refuse to drink, 120.
 colonists destroy, 120.
- Tecumseh (tē-kūm'sgh), Indian Chief, 175.
 See, too, War.
- Telegram, President Roosevelt's, 304-306
- Telegraph, the, invented, 207, 208.
 growth of the, 210.
 to California, 227.
 American Pacific, 304.

- Telephone, the, invented, 210.
 Temperance reform, 196, 197.
 Tennessee admitted, 161.
 Territory annexed, see Land.
 Texas, dispute over, 210-212.
 annexed, 210-212.
 admitted, 219.
 the last slave state, 219.
 Thanksgiving, the first, in America, 54.
 for Union victories, 263.
 Ticonderoga (ti-kōn'dēr-ō'gē) taken, 126.
 Times, the hard, of 1837, 203, 204.
 Tippecanoe, battle of, 175.
 Tobacco found in America, 18.
 sent to Europe, 18.
 raised in Virginia, 33-35.
 raised in Maryland, 65.
 trade with England, 33, 34, 114, 115.
 Tories and Patriots (Revolution), 129-132.
 Tories leave the United States, 131, 132.
 Town meetings in New England, 54, 55.
 Town, oldest in the United States, 16.
 Trade laws, English, 114, 115.
 not free between the states, 149.
 on western rivers, 190, 191.
 with West Indies, 161.
 Trails, Indian, 24.
 Travel in colonial days, 76.
 Treaties, Indian, 48, 53.
 Treaty of peace with England, 147.
 Jay's, with England, 160, 161.
 the Oregon, 214.
 Trees, girdling, 73.
 Trenton, battle of, 132, 133.
 Tyler, John, President, 207.
- Union, talk about destroying the, 199.
 Garrison would destroy the, 199.
 eleven states secede from the, 241, 242.
 war for the, see War.
 See Constitution, Declaration of Independence, Government, and United States.
- United States becomes independent, 129.
 Philadelphia first capital of, 134.
 Constitution of, adopted, 149-151.
 New York, capital of, 153.
 Washington, first President of, 152, 153.
 government of, organized, 153.
 first tariff of, 154.
 coins first money, 155.
 takes first census, 156.
 census of 1900, 156.
 extent of, at close of Revolution, 167.
 extent of, after Louisiana Purchase, 167.
 Washington, capital of, 164, 165.
- United States builds National Road, 188, 190.
 sells farming land cheap, 201, 202.
 threats of secession from, 199.
 eleven states secede from, 241, 242.
 reconstruction of seceded states of, 272.
 celebrates hundredth birthday, 279.
 growth and progress of, 279, 280, 290, 291, 292, 293, 303.
 territory acquired by, see Land.
 wars of, see War.
 states admitted to, see names of states.
 oldest town in, 16.
 population of, in 1790, 156.
 population of, in 1900, 156.
 extent of, to-day, 302.
 number of states in, now, 293.
- Utah (ū'tā), Mormons go to, 224, 225.
 admitted, 293.
- Vail, Mr., and the telegraph, 210.
 Valley Forge, Washington at, 134, 138.
 Van Buren, Martin, President, 203.
 Van Rensselaer (vān ren's'sē-lēr) estate, 40.
 Vermont, first settlement in, 58.
 admitted, 161.
 Vespucci, Amerigo (vēs-poot'chee, ā-mā-ree'go), 10.
 Vespuccius, Americus (vēs-pū'shūs, ām-ēr'ī-cūs), 10.
- Vicksburg, battle of, 261, 262.
 Vinland discovered, 2-4.
 Virginia named, 17.
 original extent of, 17.
 Raleigh's colony in, 17, 18.
 tobacco and potatoes found in, 18.
 permanently colonized (1607), 30-34.
 tobacco raised in, 33-35.
 slavery begins in, 34.
 white laborers sold in, 35.
 English girls come to, 34.
 first legislature in, 35, 36.
- Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions, 163.
 Vote, who could, in Massachusetts, 57.
- War, Indian, 81.
 in Virginia, 82.
 Pequot (pē'kwōt), in Connecticut, 82.
 "King Philip's," in Massachusetts 82-85.
 Pontiac's (pōn'tī-āk's), 85-88.
 in Ohio, 158.
 in the West, 175, 201.
 in Florida, 185.
 French and Indian, first, 98.

- War, French and Indian, second and third,
 99, 100.
 fourth, 100-109.
 Revolution, the, see Revolution.
 with France, 163.
 with African Pirates, 165.
 of 1812, the, 176-184.
 with Mexico, 215-218.
 the Civil (1861-1865), begins, 243, 244.
 first call for Union troops in, 245.
 number of Union soldiers in, 246.
 number of Confederate soldiers in,
 246.
 fighting going on every day for four
 years, 246.
 Union plan for carrying on the, 247,
 248.
 losses in, 246, 269.
 cost of, 269, 270.
 the navy in, 248.
 battles of, see Battles.
 end of, 269.
 the South after, 269.
 destroyed slavery, 270.
 united North and South, 270.
 worth all it cost, 270.
 with Spain, 296-298.
 how we treated prisoners of, 299.
 territory gained by, 299.
- War ships, see Navy.
- Washington as a surveyor, 102.
 fond of life in the woods, 102.
 carries message to the French, 102.
 leads soldiers against the French, 102.
 in Braddock's expedition, 104.
 takes command of Continental army,
 126.
 drives the British out of Boston, 126,
 128, 129.
 at New York, 132.
 retreats through New Jersey, 132.
 crosses the Delaware, 132.
 wins victory at Trenton, 132, 133.
 at Princeton, 133.
 gets money from Robert Morris, 133.
 loses Philadelphia, 134.
 retreats to Valley Forge, 134, 138.
 Benedict Arnold turns traitor, 143, 144.
 and the government, 150.
 and the Constitution, 151.
 elected first President, 152.
 inaugurated at New York, 153.
 organizes the new government, 153, 154.
 declines to take part with France, 157.
- Washington and the Jay treaty, 161.
 abuse of, 161.
 death of, 161.
- Washington, city of (1801), 164.
 to-day, 164, 165.
 taken by the British, 178.
 Confederates move against, 246.
- Washington, state of, admitted, 289.
- Water ways, Indian, 25.
- Wayne, General, in Ohio, 158.
- Weather Bureau, the, 278.
- Webster, Daniel, 232.
- West, the Spaniards in the, 14, 15.
 the French in the, 89, 97.
 George Rogers Clark in the, 138, 139.
 emigration to the, 157, 191, 201, 220,
 224, 277.
 steamboats in the, 173.
 and the National Road, 188, 190.
 great farms of the, 277.
 growth of the, 199, 202, 203, 224.
 the desire to reach the, 188, 193.
 Aaron Burr in the, 169, 170.
 trade on rivers of the, 190, 191.
 settling the, 191.
 what helped to fill the, 201.
 Jackson first President from the, 198.
 territorial growth of, 300.
 pony express to the, 226, 227.
 overland stage to the, 228.
 Pacific railways to the, 228, 229.
 opening of the new, 224-229.
 telegraph to the, 227.
- West Indies discovered, 8.
 trade with, 161.
- West Point in the Revolution, 143.
- West Virginia admitted, 270.
- Wheat raising in Maryland, 65.
 in the West, 277.
- "White Squadron," the, 290.
- Whitney, Eli, 159.
- Wilderness, battles of the, 264.
- Wisconsin admitted, 219.
- Wisconsin River, 91.
- Wolfe (wŏlf), General, takes Quebec, 105-
 108.
- Women emigrate to Virginia, 34.
- Wool, manufacture of, restricted, 114.
- Wyoming (wi-ŏ'ming) admitted, 289.
- Yankee Doodle, 135.
- York, Duke of, and New York, 41, 42,
 46.
- Yorktown, battle of, 146, 147.



APR 15 1904



LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 011 527 650 5

